

For UK order enquiries: please contact Bookpoint Ltd., 130 Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon OX14 4SB. Telephone: +44 (0) 1235 827720. Fax: +44 (0) 1235 400454. Lines are open 09.00–18.00, Monday to Saturday, with a 24-hour message answering service. You can also order through our website www.madaboutbooks.com.

For USA order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill Customer Services, PO Box 545, Blacklick, OH 43004-0545, USA. Telephone: 1-800-722-4726. Fax: 1-614-755-5645.

For Canada order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill Ryerson Ltd., 300 Water St, Whitby, Ontario L1N 9B6, Canada. Telephone: 905 430 5000. Fax: 905 430 5020.

Long renowned as the authoritative source for self-guided learning – with more than 30 million copies sold worldwide – the *Teach Yourself* series includes over 300 titles in the fields of languages, crafts, hobbies, business, computing and education.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data: a catalogue record for this title is available from The British Library

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: On file

First published in UK 1995 by Hodder Headline Ltd., 338 Euston Road, London, NW1 3BH.

First published in US 1996 by Contemporary Books, a Division of The McGraw-Hill Companies, 1 Prudential Plaza, 130 East Randolph Street, Chicago, IL 60601 USA.

This edition published 2003.

The 'Teach Yourself' name is a registered trade mark of Hodder & Stoughton Ltd.

Copyright © 1995, 2003 David Smyth

In UK: All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopy, recording, or any information storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher or under licence from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited. Further details of such licences (for reprographic reproduction) may be obtained from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited, of 90 Tottenham Court Road, London W1T 4LP.

In US: All rights reserved. Except as permitted under the United States Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of Contemporary Books.

Typeset by Graphicraft Limited, Hong Kong

Printed in Great Britain for Hodder & Stoughton Educational, a division of Hodder Headline Ltd., 338 Euston Road, London NW1 3BH by Cox & Wyman Ltd., Reading, Berkshire.

Impression number 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Year 2007 2006 2005 2004 2003

introduction	viii
pronunciation	xii
01	k00n chêu a-rai? <i>what's your name?</i> 1
	how to state your name, nationality, place of origin and occupation; what? questions; yes/no questions: . . . châi mái? ; consonants; vowels; numbers 1–10
02	nêe tâo-rài ká? <i>how much is this?</i> 14
	the language of shopping and bargaining; how much? questions; yes/no questions: . . . mái? ; . . . lêr? ; . . . ná? ; can: verb + dâi ; some more numbers: 20, 30, 40 . . . 100; consonants; vowels
03	bpai sa-yăhm sa-kwair mái? <i>will you go to Siam Square?</i> 27
	the language of taxi transactions; completed actions: verb + lâir-o ; reduplication of adjectives and adverbs; mâi . . . ròrk in simple contradictions; numbers 21–99; 'live' syllables and 'dead' syllables

04	ao kào pùt gài <i>I'll have chicken fried rice</i>	41
	how to order drinks and simple meals; polite requests: kõr + noun + nòy ; kõr + verb + nòy ; container words and numbers; where? questions; location words and prepositions; consonants; vowels	
05	tăir-o nêe mee bprai-sa-nee mái? <i>is there a post office around here?</i>	55
	simple post office transactions; more questions about the location of things; noun classifiers; want and want to; consonants	
06	kõr pòot gùp . . . nòy, dâi mái? <i>could I speak to . . . , please?</i>	67
	the language of telephone transactions; who? questions; when? questions; talking about the future: ja + verb; verbs of thinking and saying with wâh ; script review	
07	kOOn pòot tai gèng <i>you speak Thai well</i>	80
	how to talk about your knowledge of Thai; how to talk about actions that happened in the past: ker-ee + verb; how to talk about continuous actions: gum-lung + verb + yòo ; how to compare things; tone marks: mái àyk	
08	mee pêe nórng mái? <i>do you have any brothers and sisters?</i>	93
	how to greet people; kin terms: brothers and sisters, sons and daughters; why? questions; how many? questions; . . . yet? questions; tone marks: mái toh , mái dtree and mái jùt-dta-wah	
09	tahn ah-hăhn pèt bpen mái? <i>can you eat hot food?</i>	105
	more about food and restaurant transactions; anything, anywhere, anyone; the verb hâi ; if clauses; consonants; vowels	

10	mâi kào jai <i>I don't understand</i>	119
	coping strategies when you don't understand; how? questions; don't . . . ; initial consonant clusters; words with no written vowel symbol	
11	chôrp yòo grOong-tâyp mái? <i>do you like living in Bangkok?</i>	131
	how to talk about living and working in Bangkok; how to talk about things that happened in the past; some ways of intensifying adjectives and adverbs; some more uses of gôr ; consonants; vowels	
12	rót òrk gèe mohng? <i>what time does the coach leave?</i>	145
	how to make enquiries about travel arrangements; how to tell the time; miscellaneous spelling rules	
13	mee hôrng wâhng mái? <i>do you have any free rooms?</i>	159
	how to book a hotel room; . . . rêu bplào? questions; days of the week; another use of hâi ; verb + wái	
14	yàhk ja yòo bahn têe mee sôo-un <i>I want to live in a house where there is a garden</i>	171
	how to talk about things you are about to do; relative clauses; dates, months and seasons; the verb to give; negative questions	
	key to the exercises	181
	appendices	200
	consonant classes	
	vowels	
	summary of tone rules	
	taking it further	
	Thai-English vocabulary	204
	English-Thai vocabulary	224
	grammar index	241

About Thai

Thai is the national language of Thailand and is spoken by approximately 60 million people in that country. Lao, spoken in neighbouring Laos, is very closely related to Thai (although most Thais from Bangkok would have some difficulty understanding it), but the other neighbouring languages – Burmese, Cambodian and Malay – are completely different. Distinct dialects of Thai are spoken in the north, northeast and south of the country, but it is the language of the Central Region and Bangkok which is used throughout the country as the medium for education and mass media and which is taught in this course.

Thai is a *tonal* language. In tonal languages the meaning of a syllable is determined by the pitch at which it is pronounced. *kao*, for example, means 'news' when pronounced with a *low* tone, 'white' with a *rising* tone and 'rice' with a *falling* tone. If tones make pronunciation in Thai seem more complex than in more familiar European languages, the learner will probably find Thai grammar considerably easier to absorb, for there are no complex verb tenses and noun endings which seem to dominate many people's experience of trying to learn a foreign language.

Thai is written in its own unique alphabetic script which has developed from a script originally found in India. It is written across the page from left to right, with certain vowels appearing above the line of writing and others appearing below. There are no spaces between words; when spaces do occur, they act as a form of punctuation mark, similar to commas and full stops.

About the book

This book is intended for the complete beginner. It aims to equip the learner with the necessary vocabulary and grammar to cope with the day-to-day situations a foreigner is likely to encounter in Thailand. A further important aim of the course is to provide a solid introduction to the Thai writing system so that the learner will have the means to extend his or her knowledge of the language beyond this course.

Each unit is built around dialogues, followed by a brief cultural background note which draws out aspects of the linguistic or social context of the dialogues. Key phrases and expressions are highlighted, while the full vocabulary lists and explanatory language notes should enable you to understand conversations without too much difficulty. A variety of practice exercises help to reinforce the material covered in the dialogues and the key at the end of the book allows you to keep a close check that you are on the right track. A considerable part of each unit is devoted to reading and writing Thai. The script is presented in manageable chunks and tested in reading exercises.

Most of the material in each unit is reproduced in recorded form to accompany this book. You are strongly advised to purchase this to gain a clear idea of how Thai should sound.

How to use the book

Each individual will have their own preferred way of working through the course. If you have the recorded material, you might like to start each unit by listening to the dialogue a number of times with your book closed, simply to get your ear attuned to the language. Alternatively, you may prefer to work out what the dialogue means before you consider listening to it. It does not really matter what approach you adopt as long as you are happy with it and you are prepared to follow it regularly. Whatever approach you adopt, however, you are ultimately faced with the task of memorizing and accurately reproducing unfamiliar combinations of sounds. It is best to memorize words in meaningful phrases rather than in isolation and your pronunciation and intonation will obviously be greatly aided if you have the recording to use as a model. Frequent review of earlier lessons and exercises is essential if the language in them is to become almost second nature.

People learning a language which is written in an unfamiliar script may often say: 'Oh, I only want to learn to speak it, I'm not bothered about writing.' They usually imagine that learning a new script will be extremely difficult and time consuming and that they will be able to steam ahead much more quickly if they concentrate merely on the spoken language. You can, if you choose, work through this book in that fashion, simply ignoring the sections on script. But if you do, you won't be getting your money's worth from the course and you'll be adopting a short-sighted and self-limiting view. Just think how ridiculous you would think it was if a Thai told you he was studying English conversation from this dialogue because he couldn't read western script:

A กุดมอว์นิง ไมเนมออิสจอห์น

B กุดมอว์นิง มิสเตอร์จอห์น เฮอาอาร์ยูทุเค?

(When you have reached unit 11 you will see how silly it is!)

The familiar Thai script would encourage him to pronounce these English words with a Thai accent and he certainly wouldn't be able to get English speakers to write down new words for him if he were trying to expand his vocabulary; in short, he would never progress beyond the one or two books in which English is written phonetically in Thai letters.

You may not ever plan to write letters in Thai or read newspapers and novels; but if you want to build on what you can learn from a book such as this, becoming literate in Thai is an absolute must! It will also, as anyone who has mastered the script will tell you, improve your pronunciation immeasurably.

Now that you have decided that you do want to learn to read Thai, here is the good news. The Thai script is presented in this course in such a way as to persuade you that it is neither extremely difficult nor time consuming and that even if you are one of the least gifted language learners, you can, with regular practice, learn to read and write Thai. All it really requires is the patience to copy out letters, words and then phrases a sufficient number of times until it becomes almost second nature. Eventually copying out whole passages will improve not only your reading and writing skills but will also reinforce everything else you have learned about the language, including pronunciation and grammar. Keep going back over earlier lessons, because by reading material that is familiar, you will

begin to read more quickly and develop the ability to recognize words instantly without having to labour over individual letters each time.

Remember that when learning a foreign language, 'little and often' is much more effective than long but infrequent sessions. Ten to 15 minutes every day is far more productive than one long session once a week.

Romanization of Thai

For westerners learning the language it is convenient to use romanized Thai at the beginning, but it must be stressed that this is no more than a learning aid. It is not an acceptable alternative to the Thai script and most Thais would not be able to read Thai written in romanized form. There are a number of different systems of romanizing Thai, each with its advantages and disadvantages. Like all systems, the one used in this book can offer only an approximate representation of the Thai sound. The most effective strategy is to learn pronunciations from the recording and to memorize Thai script spellings rather than romanized spellings. You should treat the romanization system as a crutch and you should aim to discard it as quickly as possible.

There are a few sounds in Thai that do not exist in English and which can cause some problems. But the vast majority of Thai sounds have a reasonably close equivalent in English.

► Consonants

At the beginning of a word, consonants are generally pronounced as in English. A few sounds, however, need further clarification:

g as in *get* (not *gin*)

ng a single sound which we are familiar with in English at the end of words like 'wrong' and 'song', but which also occurs at the beginning of words in Thai:

ngahn ngâi ngahm ngoo

bp a single sound which is somewhere between a **b** sound and a **p** sound in English. Many learners find it hard to both produce this sound accurately and to distinguish it from **b**. Don't be discouraged if you do have problems; you will probably find that over a period of time you will gradually master it:

bpai bpen bpoo bplào

dt a single sound which is somewhere between a **d** sound and a **t** sound in English. Again, many learners find it difficult to distinguish from **t** at first, although usually such problems are short lived:

dtàir dtit dtorn dttrong

At the end of a word the sounds **k**, **p** and **t** are not 'released'. Examples of 'unreleased' final consonants in English include the **t** in 'rat' when 'rat trap' is said quickly and the **p** in the casual

pronunciation of 'yep!' At first you may feel that words ending in **k**, **p** and **t** all sound the same, but within a very short time you will find that you can hear a distinct difference:

bpàhk bàhp bàht
yàhk yâhp yâht

Many Thais have difficulty pronouncing an **r** sound and will substitute a **l** sound instead. Thus, **a-rai?** (*what?*) becomes **a-lai?** In words that begin with two consonants, you might also hear some Thais omit the second consonant sound. **krai?** (*who?*) becomes **kai?** and **bplah** (*fish*) becomes **bpah**. An even more bewildering change, associated with Bangkok working-class speech, is when **kw** at the beginning of a word becomes **f**, so that **kwâh** (*right*) is pronounced **fâh!**

► Vowels

Most Thai vowels have near equivalents in English. In the romanization system used in this book, vowels are pronounced as follows:

a as in *ago*
e as in *pen*
i as in *bit*
o as in *cot*
u as in *fun*
ah as in *father*
ai as in *Thai*
air as in *fair*
ao as in *Lao*
ay as in *may*
ee as in *fee*
er as in *number*
ew as in *few*
oh as in *go*
OO as in *book*
oo as in *food*
oy as in *boy*

Other sounds, however, have no near equivalent in English and you need to listen to the recording to have a proper idea of how they should be pronounced:

eu	meu	séu	keu
eu-a	mêu-a	sêu-a	něu-a
air-o	láir-o	gâir-o	tâir-o
er-ee	ler-ee	ker-ee	ner-ee

▶ Tones

There are five tones in Thai: mid tone, low tone, high tone, rising tone and falling tone. These are represented in the romanization system by the following accents: mid tone (*no mark*), low tone (˘), high tone (ˆ), rising tone (ˊ) and falling tone (ˋ). To help you attune your ears to the different tone sounds, listen to the recording of a Thai speaker saying the following words. Don't worry about the meanings at this stage – simply concentrate on listening:

mid tone	kOOn	krai	mah	bpai
	pairng	mee	dairng	bpen
low tone	jàhk	bpàirt	sìp	bàht
	yài	jòrt	èek	nèung
high tone	mái	káo	lót	lék
	róo	rót	náhm	púk
rising tone	sǎo-ay	pǎm	sǎrng	kǎr
	sǎe-a	kǎrng	nǎi	dǎe-o
falling tone	mái	chài	dài	têe
	gào	máhk	chôrp	pôt

It is obviously important to be able both to hear and to reproduce tones correctly if you are going to make yourself understood. But don't let a fear of getting a tone wrong inhibit you from practising. Surprisingly, wrong tones are very seldom the cause of misunderstandings and communication breakdowns. Indeed, many non-Thais operate confidently and effectively in the language with far from perfect accuracy in their tones.

OT

what's your name?
 คุณชื่ออะไร?
KOON chêu a-rai?

In this unit you will learn

- how to state your name, nationality, place of origin and occupation
- what? questions
- yes/no questions:
... *chài mái?*
- consonants: น ม ง ร ย ล ฎ
- vowels: -า -า̂ -อ -าย -าว
- numbers 1-10

▶ Dialogues

Peter is spending some time working at his company's Bangkok branch. The first person he meets at the office is Malee.

Malee	สวัสดีค่ะ	sa-wùt dee kâ
	คุณชื่ออะไรคะ	kOOn chêu a-rai ká?
Peter	ชื่อ ปีเตอร์ ครับ	chêu Peter krúp.
Malee	คุณปีเตอร์เป็น คนอเมริกันใช่ไหมคะ	kOOn Peter bpen kon a-may-ri-gun chái mái ká?
Peter	ไม่ใช่ครับ	mâi chái krúp
	เป็นคนอังกฤษครับ	bpen kon ung-grít krúp.
	มาจากแมนเชสเตอร์	mah jàhk Manchester.
	ขอโทษครับ	kõr-tòht krúp,
	คุณชื่ออะไรครับ	kOOn chêu a-rai krúp?

sa-wùt dee	good morning/afternoon /evening; hello; goodbye	สวัสดี
kâ, ká, krúp	(polite particles)	ค่ะ, คะ, ครับ
kOOn	you; (polite title)	คุณ
chêu	first name, to have the first name . . .	ชื่อ
a-rai?	what?	อะไร
bpen	to be	เป็น
kon	person	คน
a-may-ri-gun	American	อเมริกัน
chái mái?	isn't that so?	ใช่ไหม
mâi chái	no (to . . . chái mái? questions)	ไม่ใช่
ung-grít	English	อังกฤษ
mah	to come	มา
jàhk	from	จาก
kõr-tòht	excuse me	ขอโทษ

▶ Malee has taken Peter down to the Labour Department to sort out his work permit. An official is asking her for the information he needs to fill in his form.

Official	เขาชื่ออะไรครับ	káo chêu a-rai krúp?
Malee	ชื่อ ปีเตอร์ ค่ะ	chêu Peter kâ.
Official	นามสกุลอะไร	nahm sa-gOOn a-rai?
Malee	นามสกุล กรีน ค่ะ	nahm sa-gOOn Green kâ.
Official	เป็นคนชาติอะไรครับ	bpen kon châht a-rai krúp?
Malee	เป็นคนอังกฤษค่ะ	bpen kon ung-grít kâ.
Official	คนอังกฤษใช่ไหม	kon ung-grít, chái mái?
Malee	ใช่ค่ะ	chái kâ.
Official	ทำงานอะไร	tum ngahn a-rai?
Malee	เป็นนักธุรกิจค่ะ ทำงานกับบริษัท เอ ไอ จี	bpen núk tÓO-rá-gít kâ. tum ngahn gúp bor-ri-sút AIG.

káo	he, she, they	เขา
nahm sa-gOOn	surname; to have the surname . . .	นามสกุล
châht	nation	ชาติ
tum ngahn	to work	ทำงาน
núk tÓO-rá-gít	businessman	นักธุรกิจ
gúp	with	กับ
bor-ri-sút AIG	AIG Company	บริษัท เอ ไอ จี

- 1 What nationality does Malee assume Peter is?
- 2 What is Peter's real nationality and where does he come from?
- 3 What is Peter's occupation?
- 4 Who are his employers?

i First names are used in both formal and informal situations in Thailand. Thais, both male and female, should normally be addressed by their first name preceded by the title **kOOOn** – usually spelt *khun* in romanized letters. Thus, Mrs Patcharee Saibua, Mr Sompong Tongkum and Miss Araya Jaroenwong should be addressed as *Khun Patcharee*, *Khun Sompong* and *Khun Araya* respectively. Thais dealing with westerners in a formal professional context will often prefer to use *khun* with the westerner's surname, Charles Phillips being addressed as *Khun Phillips* rather than *Khun Charles*. Surnames have only come into general usage in Thailand within the last 100 years and their usage is restricted to written documents.

▶ Key phrases and expressions

How to:

- 1 greet someone

sa-wùt dee krúp (male speaking) สวัสดีครับ

sa-wùt dee kê (female speaking) สวัสดีค่ะ

- 2 ask somebody's name and say your name

kOOOn chêu a-rai? คุณชื่ออะไร

pôm (di-chún) chêu ... ผม (ดิฉัน) ชื่อ ...

- 3 ask somebody's surname and say your surname

kOOOn nahm sa-gOOOn a-rai? คุณนามสกุลอะไร

pôm (di-chún) nahm sa-gOOOn ... ผม (ดิฉัน) นามสกุล ...

- 4 ask somebody's nationality and state your nationality

kOOOn bpen kon châht a-rai? คุณเป็นคนชาติอะไร

pôm (di-chún) ผม (ดิฉัน)

bpen kon ung-grit เป็นคนอังกฤษ

- 5 ask somebody's occupation and state your occupation

kOOOn tum ngahn a-rai? คุณทำงานอะไร

pôm (di-chún) bpen ... ผม (ดิฉัน) เป็น ...

pôm (di-chún) ผม (ดิฉัน)

tum ngahn gùp ... ทำงานกับ ...

Language notes

1 Greetings

sa-wùt dee is a general greeting which can be used regardless of the time of day. In informal spoken Thai it is often abbreviated to 'wùt dee. The expression is also used when saying goodbye.

2 Polite particles

Particles are untranslatable words that occur at the end of utterances. There are three main types of particle – polite particles, question particles and mood particles.

Polite particles are added to the end of statements and questions to make the speaker's words sound more polite; they have no direct equivalent in English and therefore cannot be translated. The most common polite particles are **krúp**, **kâ** and **ká**. Male speakers use **krúp** at the end of both statements and questions, while females use **kâ** at the end of statements and **ká** after questions. It is not necessary to use these particles after every sentence in a conversation, although for the learner it is best to risk sounding too polite.

3 Pronouns

There are many more pronouns in Thai than in English; the correct choice will depend on such factors as the relative status and degree of intimacy between speakers. For the learner, however, it is quite possible to use Thai effectively with a limited number of pronouns, the most common of which are:

pôm	<i>I</i> (male)
di-chún/chún	<i>I</i> (female)
kOOOn	<i>you</i> (singular and plural)
káo	<i>he, she, they</i>
rao	<i>we</i>

Unlike western languages, the word for *I* varies according to the gender of the speaker; of the two female forms, **chún** is the less formal. However, Thais frequently omit pronouns altogether when it is clear from the context who is speaking, being addressed or being referred to. In many of the examples in this course, you will find that the pronoun has been omitted in Thai

to make it sound more natural and that an arbitrary choice of pronoun has been included in the English translation:

chêu a-rai? *What's your name?*
chêu Peter. *His name is Peter.*

The first example could just as correctly have been translated as *What's his/her name?* and the second as *My name is Peter*. If you look at the dialogues at the beginning of this lesson, you will notice that **bpen kon ung-grít** in the first dialogue means *I'm English* and, in the second, *He's English*.

4 Noun (singular/plural) + adjective

Nouns in Thai, unlike in many European languages, have a single fixed form, which does not distinguish between singular and plural. Thus **kon** can mean either *person* or *people*, depending on the context. Adjectives follow the noun they modify:

kon ung-grít *British person/people*
káo bpen kon tai. *He/they is/are Thai.*

5 The verb 'to be': bpen + noun

bpen is one of several different Thai verbs that are used to translate *is/are, was/were* etc. **bpen** does have other meanings (see unit 7), but when it means *to be*, it is always followed by a noun:

pôm bpen kon ung-grít. *I am British. (I-am-person-British)*
káo bpen núk tÓO-rá-gít. *He is a businessman.*

In negative sentences like, *I am not a . . .*, **bpen** is replaced by **mái châi**; it is important to understand that the negative word **mái** (*not*) cannot be used before **bpen** to mean *is not*:

pôm mái châi kon a-may-ri-gun. *I am not American.*
káo mái châi núk sèuk-sáh. *He is not a student.*

6 'Yes/no' questions: . . . châi mái?

Yes and *no* answers to questions in Thai are determined by the form of the question; there is no single word for *yes* and *no*, so the learner has to listen carefully to the *question particle* in order to be able to answer correctly.

The question particle . . . **châi mái?** is tagged onto the end of a statement to transform it into a confirmation-seeking question, rather like . . . *isn't it, . . . don't they?* etc. in English; it can be used for checking that you have heard or understood correctly what has just been said. . . . **châi mái?** questions are answered either **châi** *yes* or **mái châi** *no*:

káo chêu Peter châi mái? *His name is Peter, isn't it?*
– châi. *– Yes.*
káo bpen kon a-may-ri-gun *He's American, isn't he?*
 châi mái?
– mái châi. *– No.*

7 'What?' questions

The Thai word for *what?* is **a-rai**. It normally occurs at the end of a sentence:

káo chêu a-rai? *What is his name?*
káo nahm sa-gOOn a-rai? *What is his surname?*
káo bpen kon châht a-rai? *What nationality is he?*
káo tum ngahn a-rai? *What (job) does he do?*

To answer such questions, substitute **a-rai** with the appropriate word; an exception is the question **káo tum ngahn a-rai?** to which the normal response is **káo bpen . . .** (*He is a . . .*) followed by the name of the occupation:

káo chêu a-rai? *What is his name?*
– káo chêu sôm-chai. *– His name is Somchai.*
káo bpen kon châht a-rai? *What nationality is he?*
– káo bpen kon tai. *– He is Thai.*

but
káo tum ngahn a-rai? *What (job) does he do?*
– káo bpen mǒr. *– He is a doctor.*

Exercises

- ▶ 1 How would you respond if a Thai asked you these questions?
- kOOn chêu a-rai?
 - kOOn nahm sa-gOOn a-rai?
 - kOOn bpen kon châht a-rai?
 - kOOn tum ngahn a-rai?

▶ 2 How would you respond if Malee asked you these questions about Peter?

- (a) káo chêu Peter châi mái ká?
- (b) káo nahm sa-gOOOn a-rai ká?
- (c) káo bpen kon a-may-ri-gun châi mái ká?
- (d) káo bpen kon châht a-rai ká?
- (e) káo tum ngahn gùp bor-ri-sùt AIG, châi mái ká?
- (f) káo tum-ngahn a-rai ká?



3 Chantana, a Thai student (*student núk sèuk-sǎh*), is applying for a visa to study in England. Match the questions she was asked when she went to the British Embassy with the answers she gave.

Questions

- (a) bpen kon tai, châi mái krúp?
- (b) tum-ngahn a-rai krúp?
- (c) nahm sa-gOOOn a-rai krúp?
- (d) kOOOn chêu a-rai krúp?

Answers

- (i) nahm sa-gOOOn bOOOn-dee kâ.
- (ii) châi kâ.
- (iii) di-chún chêu chũn-ta-nah kâ.
- (iv) bpen núk sèuk-sǎh kâ.

▶ 4 How would you introduce these people?

	1	2	3	4
name	Somsak	John	Makoto	Paula
surname	Torngkum	Stevens	Iwasaki	Besson
nationality	Thai	American	Japanese	French
	(tai)	(a-may-ri-gun)	(yêe-bpOOOn)	(fa-rùng-sàyt)
home town	Chiangmai	New York	Tokyo	Paris
	(chee-ung mài)	(new yórk)	(dtoh-gee-o)	(bpah-rít)
occupation	doctor	student	businessman	teacher
	(mǎ)	(núk sèuk-sǎh)	(núk tOOO-rá-gít)	(ah-jahn)

Example

káo chêu sǎm-sùk
nahm sa-gOOOn torng-kum
bpen kon tai
mah jàhk chee-ung-mài
bpen mǎ

5 Using the information in exercise 4, complete the following sentences using **bpen** and **mái châi**:

- (a) sǎm-sùk ... kon tai ... kon yêe-bpOOOn
- (b) John ... kon ung-grít ... kon a-may-ri-gun
- (c) Makoto ... núk sèuk-sǎh ... núk tOOO-rá-gít
- (d) Paula ... ah-jahn ... mǎ

6 How would you ask the following questions?

- (a) Excuse me, what's your name?
- (b) His name is Somsak, isn't it?
- (c) What is his surname?
- (d) What nationality is he?
- (e) He's Thai, isn't he?
- (f) She's a teacher, isn't she?
- (g) She is not Thai; she is Japanese.
- (h) He is not English; he is French.

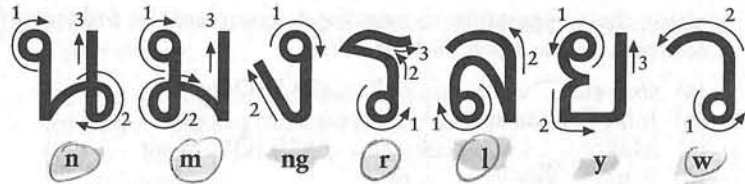
Reading and writing

▶ 1 Consonants

Consonants in Thai are divided into three groups or 'classes' called low class, mid class and high class. It is important to remember which class a consonant belongs to as the class of the initial consonant in a word will partly determine the tone of that word. The consonants in this unit are all *low-class* consonants.

Thai consonants are all pronounced with an inherent '-or' sound; thus we can say at the end of this lesson that we know the letters 'nor', 'mor', 'ngor', 'ror' and so on. Each Thai consonant also has a 'name' - 'nor' is known as **nor nõ** (*nõ* means *rat*) and then there is **mor máh** (*máh* means *horse*), **ngor ngoo** (*ngoo* means *snake*) and so on. When Thais learn their alphabet at school, they always learn the name of the letter, but it is not necessary for the foreigner to know these names in order to be able to read.

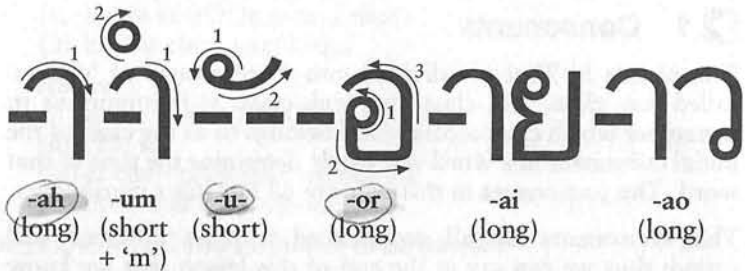
Look carefully at the following letters. They are all written with a single stroke starting from the inside of the loop and moving outwards. In letters where there are two loops, the starting point is the top loop on the left-hand side. Copy out each letter a number of times until you can reproduce it accurately and naturally; say the name of the letter (e.g. *mor*) each time you write it to help you memorize it:



2 Vowels

Vowels are classified as either long or short. In English, an example of a short vowel sound is the *i* in 'bin', while the vowel sound in 'seen' is long. As each vowel symbol is introduced you will need to remember whether it is a long or short vowel, as vowel length plays a part in determining the tone of a word. A full list of long and short vowels appears in an appendix.

The vowels symbols in this unit, with the exception of -u-, are written after a consonant symbol, the dash representing the position of a consonant; in subsequent units, however, you will see that certain vowel symbols are written above the consonant, others below and some in front.



3 Words

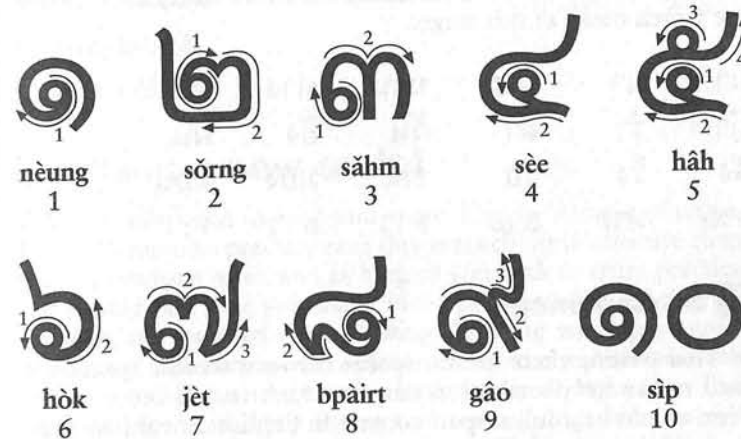
Here are some simple words combining the consonants and vowels you have met in this unit. If you have the recording that accompanies the course listen to them and then copy each word out a few times. The first two words occurred at the beginning of the unit in the conversation. Go back to this section and see if you can identify them in the Thai script.

มา	งาน	นาน	นาย	ลาว
mah	ngahn	nahn	nai	lao
to come	work	a long time	Mr	Lao

นำ	มัน	รอ	ยอม
num	mun	ror	yorm
to lead	it	to wait	to agree

4 Numbers

Although Arabic numerals are widely used in Thailand it is useful to be familiar with the Thai system of writing the numbers 1–10. These numbers are, incidentally, written the same way in the Cambodian script.



Reading practice

1 Letters

How many letters can you identify in this sample of Thai? Put a faint pencil stroke through every letter you can recognize.

ตลาดทางด้านยุโรปของเราในตอนนี้อยู่ได้ว่าไปได้สวย โดยเฉพาะที่อังกฤษ ตอนนี้อยู่เที่ยวเมืองไทยเป็นที่นิยมกันมากเหมือนกับเป็นแฟชั่นอีกอย่างหนึ่ง เดิมเขาจะไปฮ่องกงกันมากกว่าเพราะฮ่องกงเป็นเมืองขึ้นของเขาและคนพูดภาษาอังกฤษกันได้เป็นส่วนมาก

Perhaps learning to read Thai isn't quite as daunting as you thought! You probably found, however, that it required quite an effort of concentration to scan through these few lines. As you become more accustomed to the Thai script, you will find that you can pick out letters and words quickly and effortlessly.

▶ 2 Words

Read the words in the table several times until you can read both rows and columns quickly and accurately. When you can do this, pick words at random and see how quickly you can read them. As a further test, listen to the exercise on the recording and write down the words as dictation. Don't worry about what the words mean at this stage.

มา	นา	นาม	นาน	นาง	งาน
นำ	รำ	ลำ	วัน	ยัง	มัน
ล้าง	รัง	รอ	รอง	มอง	นอน
ราย	นาย	ยาย	ลาว	ยาว	ราว

▶ 3 Sentences

In Thai writing there are no spaces between words. Spaces are used rather for punctuation purposes and tend to occur where there would be a full stop or comma in English. For the western learner, this means that there is the added complication of having to recognize where one word ends and another begins. Start reading each line from the left, adding a word in each column until you have the full three-word sentence on the right-hand side. Check in the key how well you read the sentences. And yes, the sentences are not terribly useful, but if you have read them correctly, you have cleared your first big hurdle in reading Thai!

ยาม	ยามลาว	ยามลาวมา
<i>watchman</i>	<i>Lao watchman</i>	<i>The Lao watchman comes.</i>
นาย	นายรอ	นายรอนาน
<i>boss</i>	<i>the boss waits</i>	<i>The boss waits for a long time.</i>
นาง	นางลา	นางลางาน
<i>Mrs</i>	<i>Mrs leaves</i>	<i>Mrs leaves work.</i>
ยาย	ยายรำ	ยายรำนาน
<i>Granny</i>	<i>Granny dances</i>	<i>Granny dances for a long time.</i>

4 Numbers

How would you dial these Bangkok telephone numbers?

- ๒๓๖-๔๘๘๐
- ๕๘๐-๗๓๕๕
- ๒๒๕-๗๓๘๑
- ๖๘๓-๒๑๔๕
- ๓๗๑-๙๕๔๘

Learning a new script

You can only learn to read and write Thai by regular practice. Ten to 15 minutes practice each day is much more effective than one hour twice a week and as long as you stick to daily practice you should find that you make rapid progress. You might, for example, try some of the following 'learning strategies': copy each letter and each word a dozen or so times until you can write it quickly and accurately; look at the dialogues in Thai script and see how many letters and how many parts of words you can recognize; and get into the habit of doodling in Thai so as to improve your handwriting or making up sentences with the Thai words you can spell.

02

nêe tào-rài ká? how much is this? นี่เท่าไรคะ

In this unit you will learn

- the language of shopping and bargaining
- how much? questions
- yes/no questions:
... mái?; ... lěr?; ... ná?
- can: verb + dái
- some more numbers: 20, 30, 40... 100
- consonants: ก จ ด ต บ ป อ
- vowels: ไ-ไ-ไ-อี-อี-อู

▶ Dialogues

Peter's wife, Sue, is admiring the shirts at one of the pavement stalls along Sukhumvit Road in central Bangkok.

Sue	นี่เท่าไรคะ	nêe tào-rài ká?
Vendor	แปดสิบบาทค่ะ	bpàirt-sip bàht ká.
Sue	แปดสิบบาทหรือคะ	bpàirt-sip bàht lěr ká?
	แพงไปหน่อย	pairng bpai nòy.
	หกสิบบาทได้ไหม	hòk-sip bàht dái mái?
Vendor	ไม่ได้ค่ะ	mái dái ká.
	ไม่แพง	mái pairng.
	สวยนะ	sǒo-ay ná.
Sue	สีเดงมีไหม	sǐe dairng mee mái?
Vendor	มีค่ะ	mee ká.
	สีเดงสวยมากนะคะ	sǐe dairng sǒo-ay mâhk ná ká.
	คิดเจ็ดสิบบาทก็แล้วกัน	kít jèt-sip bàht gôr láir-o gun.
	ไม่แพงนะ	mái pairng ná.
Sue	โอ เค	oh kay.
	ตกลงเจ็ดสิบบาท	dtòk long jèt-sip bàht.

nêe	this	นี่
tào-rài?	how much?	เท่าไร
bpàirt-sip	eighty	แปดสิบ
bàht	baht (unit of currency)	บาท
lěr? (spelt rǔu)	(question particle)	หรือ
pairng	expensive	แพง
... bpai nòy	a little too...	...ไปหน่อย
hòk-sip	sixty	หกสิบ
dái	can	ได้

... dâi mái?	can you ... ?	ได้ไหม
mâi	not	ไม่
mâi dâi	can't; no (in ... dâi mái? questions)	ไม่ได้
sǎo-ay	beautiful, pretty	สวย
ná	(question particle)	นะ
sǎe dairng	red	สีแดง
mee	to have	มี
... mái?	(question particle)	ไหม
mâhk	very, much	มาก
kít	to think, calculate, charge	คิด
jèt-síp	seventy	เจ็ดสิบ
... gôr láir-o gun	let's settle for...	... ก็แล้วกัน
oh kay	OK	โอเค
dtòk long	agree(d)	ตกลง

▶ Peter, meanwhile, has gone to a market, where he spots some unfamiliar fruits.

Peter	นี่อะไรครับ	nêe a-rai krúp?
Vendor	น้อยหน้าค่ะ	nóy-nàh kâ.
Peter	อะไรนะครับ	a-rai ná krúp?
Vendor	เรียกว่าน้อยหน้าค่ะ	rêe-uk wâh nóy-nàh kâ.
Peter	น้อยหน้าใช่ไหม	nóy-nàh, châi mái?
Vendor	ใช่ค่ะ	châi kâ.
	อร่อยนะ หวาน	a-ròy ná. wâhn.
	ลองชิมไหม	lorng chim mái?
	... อร่อยไหม	... a-ròy mái?
Peter	อร่อยครับ โหละเท่าไร	a-ròy krúp. loh la tào-rài?
Vendor	โหละสี่สิบบาทค่ะ	loh la sèe-síp bàht kâ.

Peter	ลดหน่อยได้ไหมครับ	lót nòy, dâi mái krúp.
Vendor	สี่สิบไม่แพงค่ะ	sèe-síp mâi pairng kâ.
	คิดสองโลเจ็ดสิบห้า	kít sǎrng loh jèt-síp-hâh
	ก็แล้วกัน	gôr láir-o gun.
Peter	ครับ...	krúp...
	แล้วกล้วยหิวละเท่าไร	láir-o glóo-ay wêe la tào-rài?
Vendor	หิวละยี่สิบค่ะ	wêe la yêe-síp kâ.

nóy-nàh	custard apple	น้อยหน้า
a-rai ná?	pardon?	อะไรนะ
rêe-uk wâh ...	(it's) called ...	เรียกว่า...
a-ròy	to be tasty	อร่อย
wâhn	to be sweet	หวาน
lorng	to try out	ลอง
chim	to taste	ชิม
loh	kilo	โล
la	per	ละ
tào-rài?	how much?	เท่าไร
lót	to reduce	ลด
nòy	a bit	หน่อย
glóo-ay	banana	กล้วย
wêe	bunch	หิว

- 1 What colour shirt does Sue want?
- 2 What price does the vendor say at first?
- 3 What price do they finally agree on?
- 4 Does Peter like the custard apple he tries?
- 5 How many kilos does he buy and how much does he pay?
- 6 How much are the bananas?

i Most financial transactions in Thailand, whether shopping, booking hotel rooms or taking a taxi, have traditionally been open to bargaining. While there are now areas of Bangkok life where this practice has disappeared (e.g. fixed prices in department stores, supermarkets and meter taxis), the ability to haggle *politely* over prices can still be useful for the foreigner in Thailand. You need some idea in advance of a reasonable price for the goods or services you are trying to purchase if your bargaining is to carry credibility: to assume that all prices have been marked up by a certain percentage is too simplistic. Above all else, the bargaining should be carried out in a relaxed and easy-going manner; a smile and a sense of humour are far more likely to secure a satisfactory deal than an angry and aggressive approach.

Early morning markets were, until recently, a good place to watch Thais haggling over prices and to practise bargaining. But while prices may now be less open to negotiation, markets can still provide a venue to try out some simple language skills. When business is slack, you can, like Peter, in the second dialogue, ask what unfamiliar (and familiar) fruits are called in Thai (*nêe a-rai?* or *nêe rêe-uk wâh a-rai?*), ask the vendor to repeat what she said (*a-rai ná?*), confirm that you have heard it correctly (*rêe-uk wâh . . . châi mái?*), ask her the price of her produce and even try to knock the price down a little. If you have the same conversation with half a dozen different vendors, you will find that within a matter of days your confidence will begin to soar.

▶ Key phrases and expressions

How to:

- ask the price of something
nêe tào-rài? นี่เท่าไร
- say something is too expensive
pairng bpai nòy แพงไปหน่อย
- suggest a price
jèt-sip bàht dái mái? เจ็ดสิบบาทได้ไหม
- ask for a discount
lót nòy dái mái? ลดหน่อยได้ไหม

- ask what something is called
nêe a-rai? นี่อะไร
nêe rêe-uk wâh a-rai? นี่เรียกว่าอะไร
- ask how much something costs per kilo
X loh la tào-rài? X โลละเท่าไร

Language notes

1 'How much?' questions

The Thai word for *how much?* is *tào-rài?* It always occurs at the end of a sentence:

nûn (<i>that</i>) tào-rài?	How much is that?
séu (<i>buy</i>) tào-rài?	How much did you buy it for?
séu rót (<i>car</i>) tào-rài?	How much did you buy the car for?

▶ 2 Numbers

In the first unit you learned the numbers 1–10. This unit adds the multiples of ten up to 100. These are formed in a regular way with the exception of 20:

twenty	yêe-sìp	๒๐
thirty	săhm-sìp	๓๐
forty	sèe-sìp	๔๐
fifty	hâh-sìp	๕๐
sixty	hòk-sìp	๖๐
seventy	jèt-sìp	๗๐
eighty	bpàirt-sìp	๘๐
ninety	gâo-sìp	๙๐
one hundred	(nèung) róy	๑๐๐

3 'Yes/no' questions: . . . lěr?

The question particle *lěr?*, like *châi mái?* (unit 1), is used in confirmation-seeking questions; but while *châi mái?* tends to be neutral, *lěr?* often conveys a sense of surprise or disappointment

about the confirmation it seeks. In the first dialogue, Sue does not give the vendor time to respond (*Eighty baht, eh? That's a bit expensive*). The polite particles **krúp** (male speakers) or **kâ** (female speakers) (unit 1) can be used as *yes* answers to **lêr?** questions and **bplào krúp** or **bplào kâ** for *no* answers:

bpàirt-sìp bàht lêr ká? *Eighty baht, eh?*
– **kâ**. / **bplào krúp** (**kâ**). **gào sìp**. – *Yes*. / *No*. *Ninety*.

4 Verb + dâi

The meaning of the verb **dâi** depends on its position in a sentence. As an auxiliary verb (as it is in this unit), it means *can*, *able to* and occurs in the pattern verb + **dâi**:

pôm tum dâi. *I can do (it). (I-do-can)*
kOOn bpai (go) dâi. *You can go. (I-go-can)*
káo lôt dâi. *He can lower the price.*
(He-lower-can)

5 Yes/no questions: ... mái?

The question particle **mái?** occurs at the end of a sentence and is used in neutral questions requiring a *yes/no* answer. To answer *yes* to a **mái?** question, the verb in the question is repeated; to answer *no*, the pattern **mâi** + verb is used. Be careful not to confuse question word **mái?**, pronounced with a high tone, and negative **mâi**, pronounced with a falling tone:

hòk-sìp bàht dâi mái? *How about sixty baht?*
– **dâi kâ/mâi dâi kâ**. – *Yes/no*.
sõo-ay mái? *Is it pretty?*
– **sõo-ay/mâi sõo-ay**. – *Yes/no*.
nóy-nàh a-ròy mái? *Is the custard apple tasty?*
– **a-ròy/mâi a-ròy**. – *Yes/no*.
sêe dairng mee mái? *Do you have (it in) red?*
– **mee/mâi mee**. – *Yes/no*.

Notice the difference between the neutral **mái?** question and the confirmation-seeking **châi mái?** question:

sõo-ay mái? *Is it pretty?*
sõo-ay châi mái? *It's pretty, isn't it?*
sêe dairng mee mái? *Do you have a red one?*
sêe dairng mee châi mái? *You have a red, one don't you?*

6 Negatives

The negative is formed by the pattern **mâi** + verb/adjective:

mâi pairng. *It's not expensive.*
mâi sõo-ay. *It's not beautiful.*
mâi mee. *I don't have (any)/there aren't (any).*

Sentences involving the auxiliary verb **dâi** are negated by the pattern verb + **mâi dâi**:

pôm tum mâi dâi. *I can't do (it). (I-do-not-can)*
kOOn bpai mâi dâi. *You can't go. (You-go-not-can)*
káo lôt mâi dâi. *He can't lower the price.*
(He-lower-not-can)

7 Adjectives

Adjectives in Thai do not occur with the verb **bpên** (*to be*); a word like **pairng** can mean both *expensive* and *it is expensive*.

8 Yes/no questions: ... ná?

ná? is a question particle which invites agreement with the preceding statement (e.g. *The traffic is terrible today, isn't it?*). It is used commonly when initiating a conversation. The polite particles **krúp** (male speakers) or **kâ** (female speakers) can be used as *yes* answers to **ná?** questions and **mâi** + verb + **krúp** (**kâ**) for *no* answers:

a-ròy ná? *It's tasty, isn't it?*
– **krúp / mâi a-ròy kâ**. – *Yes / No it isn't*.
pairng ná? *It's expensive, isn't it?*
– **kâ / mâi pairng krúp**. – *Yes / No it isn't*.

In the second dialogue **ná?** occurs in the expression **arai ná?** (*pardon?*):

Peter **née a-rai krúp?** *What's this?*
Vendor **nóy-nàh kâ**. *A custard apple.*
Peter **a-rai ná krúp?** *Pardon?*

Here **ná?** is used with the question word **arai?** (*what?*) to request that a piece of information be repeated; it can also occur with the question words *when?*, *who?*, *where?*, *why?* and *how?* (which you will meet in later units), to convey the meaning *When was that again?*, *Who was that you saw?* and so on.

9 Colours

The word *sêe* is both the noun *colour* and the verb *to be the colour* X. *sêe* occurs before a specific colour word when describing the colour of something:

sêe a-rai?	What colour is it?
sêe dairng.	Red. / It is red.
sêu-a (shirt) sêe a-rai?	What colour is the shirt?
sêu-a sêe dairng mee mái?	Do you have a red shirt?

The most common colour words are:

sêe dairng	red
sêe kêe-o	green
sêe lêu-ung	yellow
sêe núm ngern	blue
sêe dum	black
sêe núm dtahn	brown
sêe káo	white

10 Word order

Normal word order in Thai is subject + verb + object. Notice how Sue puts *sêe dairng* at the beginning of the sentence when she is asking if the vendor has any red t-shirts. This strategy of putting the topic at the beginning of the sentence is very common in Thai. It would also have been perfectly correct for her to have said *mee sêe dairng mái?*

11 per kilo/fruit/bunch

The Thai word for *per* (as in *per kilo*) is *la*. When asking and stating the price of things per kilo, per fruit, per bunch and so on, the word order in Thai is quite different from English:

nóy-nàh loh la tào-rài? custard apple – kilo – per – how much?
sôm loh la sêe-síp bàht orange – kilo – per – forty baht

However, not all fruits are bought by the kilo. Bananas are bought by the bunch (*wêe* – which literally means *comb*), while large fruit, such as water melons (*dtairng moh*), papayas (*ma-la-gor*), pineapples (*sùp-bpa-rót*) and mangoes (*ma-môo-ung*) are bought by the individual fruit (*bai*):

glôo-ay wêe la tào-rài? How much are bananas per bunch?
ma-la-gor bai la tào-rài? How much are papayas per fruit?
ma-môo-ung bai la tào-rài? How much are mangoes per fruit?

Exercises

- ▶ 1 How well can you bargain? Imagine that you have been quoted the following prices. Remark that it is a little too expensive and suggest a price 20 baht cheaper. The first one has been done for you:
- gâo-síp bàht
– pairng bpai nôy krúp/kâ.
jèt-síp bàht dâi mái?
 - jèt-síp bàht
 - bpàirt-síp bàht
 - sêe-síp bàht
 - hâh-síp bàht
- 2 How would you say:
- How much is this?
 - That's a bit expensive.
 - Can you lower the price a little?
 - How about 50 baht?
 - The red (one) isn't pretty.
 - Do you have green?
- ▶ 3 How would you ask the price of these different kinds of fruit? Use the word given in brackets to help.



- sùp-bpa-rót (bai)
- sôm (loh)
- glôo-ay (wêe)
- ma-la-gor (bai)
- ma-môo-ung (bai)
- nóy-nàh (loh)
- dtairng-moh (bai)

- 4 Translate the following pairs of questions into Thai:
- (a) Is it tasty? / It's tasty, isn't it?
 (b) Is it expensive? / It's expensive, isn't it?
 (c) Is it pretty? / It's pretty, isn't it?
 (d) Do you have a red one? / You have a red one, don't you?
- 5 Peter is trying to find out the Thai word for *mango*. This is what the vendor said to him. What were his questions?

Peter _____?
 Vendor rêe-uk wâh ma-môo-ung kâ.
 Peter _____?
 Vendor ma-môo-ung kâ.
 Peter _____?
 Vendor châi kâ.
 Peter _____?
 Vendor bai la yêe-síp bàht kâ.
 Peter: _____?
 Vendor lôt mâi dâi kâ.

Reading and writing

► 1 Consonants

In unit 1 you learned the most common low-class consonants. In this unit you meet the main *mid-class* consonants:



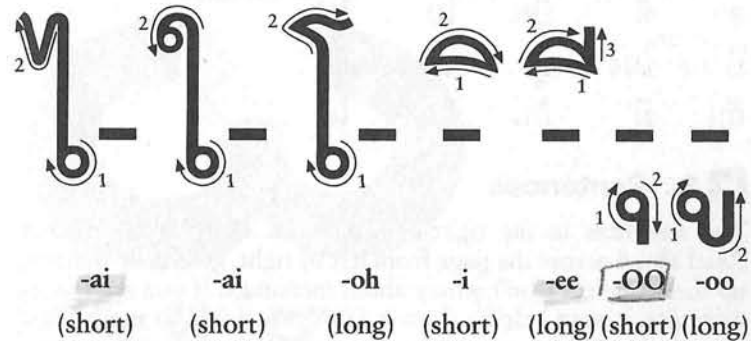
2 'Zero' consonant

Notice that the final symbol of this group is identical in appearance to the vowel -or you learned in unit 1. When the symbol occurs at the beginning of a word, however, it is a consonant, which we can call 'zero consonant' because it has no

sound of its own. It is used when writing words which begin with a vowel *sound*:

วาง อาว อ้า อาย อั้น
 ahng ao um ai un

► 3 Vowels



The first three vowels are written in front of the consonant, even though the consonant is pronounced first. Although the first two vowels are pronounced exactly the same, when it comes to writing, they are not interchangeable and you should memorize the correct spelling of a word.

Reading practice

1 Letters

Here is the same sample of Thai script that you met in unit 1. Again, put a faint pencil stroke through all the letters you can now recognize:

ตลาดทางด้านยุโรปของเราในตอนนี้นำไปได้อย่างดี
 โดยเฉพาะที่อังกฤษ ตอนนี้นำไปเที่ยวเมืองไทยเป็นที่นิยม
 กันมากเหมือนกับเป็นแฟชั่นอีกอย่างหนึ่ง เดิมเขาจะ
 ไปฮ่องกงกันมากกว่าเพราะฮ่องกงเป็นเมืองขึ้นของเขา
 และคนพูดภาษาอังกฤษกันได้เป็นส่วนมาก

2 Words

Try to read these words before listening to them on the recording. Don't worry if you find it difficult to hear the difference between กิ and คิ at this stage. It will come with practice:

กิน	กัน	ใจ	ดู	ดี
ตา	ตี	บิน	ไป	ไป
ปี	โมง	ปุ	โรง	ยุ่ง
อัน	มี	กัน	ลอง	โล

3 Sentences

The sentences in the right-hand column all have five words. Read aloud across the page from left to right, gradually building up the sentence. Don't worry about meanings. If you are having difficulty, it may help to draw a faint pencil line to mark word boundaries, but beware of being too dependent on this strategy. Note that all the words that you are reading at the moment are pronounced with a mid tone:

บินมา	บินไปบินมา	ยุ่งบินไปบินมา
มาดู	ยินดีมาดู	ลุงยินดีมาดู
พูดำ	มีพูดำ	ในนามีพูดำ
งูตาย	ตั้งูตาย	ยามลาวตั้งูตาย
นางงามตั้ง	คูนางงามตั้ง	รอคูนางงามตั้ง

4 Match the dates

In Thailand, the year is normally counted according to BE (Buddhist era) which is 543 years ahead of the AD year. 2500 BE is thus 1957 AD, while 2000 AD is 2543 BE:

- | | |
|-----------------|----------------------|
| (i) ๕/๑/๒๕๓๗ | (a) 19 July 1981 |
| (ii) ๒๕/๑๒/๒๕๓๙ | (b) 8 November 1948 |
| (iii) ๑๙/๖/๒๕๒๔ | (c) 5 January 1954 |
| (iv) ๓/๙/๒๕๓๗ | (d) 25 December 1996 |
| (v) ๙/๑๑/๒๕๓๑ | (e) 3 September 1994 |

03

bpai sa-yǎhm
sa-kwair mǎi?
Will you go to Siam Square?
ไปสยามสแควร์ไหม

In this unit you will learn

- the language of taxi transactions
- completed actions: verb + láir-o
- reduplication of adjectives and adverbs
- mǎi ... rǒk in simple contradictions
- numbers 21–99
- 'live' syllables and 'dead' syllables

Dialogues

Sue has flagged down a taxi and before stepping into the vehicle she checks that the driver is willing to take her to Siam Square.

Sue ไปสยามสแควร์ไหมคะ bpai sa-yăhm sa-kwair mái ká?

Taxi ไปครับ... bpai krúp...

Sue tells the driver where to pull up...

Sue จอดใกล้ ๆ สีแยก jòrt glâi glâi sèe yâirk

ได้ไหมคะ dâi mái ká?

Taxi ได้ครับ dâi krúp.

ตรงนี้ใช่ไหมครับ dtrong-née châi mái krúp?

Sue ใช่ค่ะ เท่าไรคะ châi kâ. tâo-rài ká?

Taxi แก้วสิบเอ็ดบาทครับ gâo-sip-èt bàht krúp.

Sue ร้อยบาทก็แล้วกัน rói bàht gôr láir-o gun.

Taxi ขอบคุณมากครับ kòrp-kOon mâhk krúp.

โชคดีครับ chòhk dee krúp.

Sue โชคดีค่ะ chòhk dee kâ.

Sue has called a taxi to take her back to her home in Soi 23 on Sukhumwit Road.

Sue ไปถนนสุขุมวิท bpai ta-nôn sÒO-kŎOm-wít

ซอยสี่สิบสามไหมคะ soy yêe-sip sâhm mái ká?

Taxi ไปครับ... bpai krúp...

As they approach their destination, the taxi driver asks Sue if she wants him to drive into the soi (lane).

Taxi เข้าซอยไหมครับ kâo soy mái krúp?

Sue ใช่ค่ะ kâo kâ.

ไปสุดซอย... bpai sŎOt soy...

จอดใกล้ ๆ รถสีแดงค่ะ jòrt glâi glâi rôt sèe dairng kâ.

Taxi ครับ ตรงนี้ใช่ไหมครับ krúp. dtrong-née châi mái krúp?

Sue ใช่ค่ะ เท่าไรคะ châi kâ. tâo-rài ká?

bpai	to go	ไป
sa-yăhm sa-kwair	Siam Square	สยามสแควร์
jòrt	park (v)	จอด
glâi	near	ใกล้
sèe-yâirk	crossroads	สีแยก
dtrong-née	right here	ตรงนี้
gâo-sip-èt	ninety one	เก้าสิบเอ็ด
kòrp-kOon (mâhk)	thank you (very much)	ขอบคุณ(มาก)
chòhk dee	good luck	โชคดี
ta-nôn	road	ถนน
ta-nôn sÒO-kŎOm-wít	Sukhumwit Road	ถนนสุขุมวิท
soy	soi, lane	ซอย
yêe-sip-sâhm	twenty three	ยี่สิบสาม
kâo	to enter	เข้า
sŎOt soy	end of the soi	สุดซอย
rót	car	รถ

Peter, meanwhile, is taking a tuk-tuk to meet a friend at a small hotel in central Bangkok. Before stepping into the vehicle, he checks that the driver knows where it is.

Peter รู้จักโรงแรมรีโนใหม่ róo-júk rohng raim ree-noh mái?

Tuk-tuk โรงแรมรีโนหรือ rohng raim ree-noh lër?

Peter ครับ อยู่ krúp. yòo

ซอยเกษมสันต์ soy ga-săym-sŭn

ใกล้ ๆ glâi glâi

สนามกีฬา sa-năhm gee-lah

แห่งชาติ hàirng châht.

Tuk-tuk อ้อ สนามกีฬา ôr... sa-năhm gee-lah

แห่งชาติใช่ไหมครับ hàirng châht châi mái?

รู้จัก róo-júk.

Peter	ไปเท่าไรครับ	bpai tâo-rài krúp?
Tuk-tuk	เก้าสิบบาทครับ	gâo-sip bàht krúp.
Peter	แพงไปหน่อยครับ	pairng bpai nòy krúp.
Tuk-tuk	ไม่แพงหรอกครับ	mâi pairng ròrk krúp.
	รถติดมากนะ	rót dtit mâhk ná.
Peter	เจ็ดสิบได้ไหม	jèt-sip dâi mái?
Tuk-tuk	ไม่ได้ครับ	mâi dâi krúp.
	คิดแปดสิบก็แล้วกัน	kít bpàirt-sip gôr láir-o gun.
Peter	โอเคไป	oh kay. bpai.

As they approach a crossroads, Peter gives the tuk-tuk driver further directions.

Peter	ถึงสี่แยกแล้ว เลี้ยวซ้ายครับ ...	těung sèe yâirk láir-o léo-o sái krúp ...
Tuk-tuk	ครับ	krúp.
Peter	... แล้วเลี้ยวขวา เข้าซอยเกษมสันต์	... láir-o léo-o kwäh kâo soy ga-săym-sün.
Tuk-tuk	เลี้ยวขวาที่นี่ ใช่ไหมครับ	léo-o kwäh tée-nêe châi mái krúp?
Peter	ใช่ครับ ... แล้วจอดที่โน่น ใกล้ ๆ รถสีขาว นี่แปดสิบบาทครับ	châi krúp ... láir-o jòrt tée-nôhn glâi glâi rót sêe kăo. nêe bpàirt-sip bàht krúp.
Tuk-tuk	ขอบคุณครับ	kòrp-kOOn krúp.

róo-jük	to know	รู้จัก
rohng rairm	hotel	โรงแรม
rohng rairm ree-noh	Reno Hotel	โรงแรมรีโน
yòo	to be situated at	อยู่
soy ga-săym-sün	Soi Kasemsan	ซอยเกษมสันต์

sa-năhm gee-lah	stadium	สนามกีฬา
... hàirng châht	national แห่งชาติ
sa-năhm gee-lah	National Stadium	สนามกีฬา
hàirng châht		แห่งชาติ
ôr ...	ah! (exclamation of realisation)	อ้อ
mâi ... ròrk	not ... at all	ไม่ ... หรือ
rót dtit	traffic jam	รถติด
jèt-sip	seventy	เจ็ดสิบ
bpàirt-sip	eighty	แปดสิบ
těung	to reach	ถึง
láir-o	already; and then	แล้ว
léo-o	to turn	เลี้ยว
sái	left	ซ้าย
krúp (kâ)	yes	ครับ (ค่ะ)
kwäh	right	ขวา
têe-nêe	here	ที่นี่
têe-nôhn	over there	ที่โน่น
sêe kăo	white	สีขาว

- 1 On her trip to Siam Square, where does Sue ask the taxi to pull up?
- 2 How much does her journey cost?
- 3 How much does she give the taxi driver?
- 4 What part of Soi 23 does Sue live in?
- 5 In Soi 23, where does Sue ask the taxi to pull up?
- 6 What soi is the Reno Hotel situated on?
- 7 What is the nearest major landmark?
- 6 How much does the tuk-tuk driver want to charge?
- 7 What fare does Peter finally negotiate?
- 8 Does the tuk-tuk make a right turn or a left turn into the soi where the Reno Hotel is?
- 9 Where does the tuk-tuk pull up?

i You can travel around Bangkok by ordinary bus, air-conditioned bus, taxi, or **samlor** (sáhm lór) – the three-wheeled motorized pedicab – popularly known as tuk-tuk (**dtóok dtóok**) after the unique spluttering sound of its engine. Parts of Bangkok are now linked by the overhead ‘sky train’, while plans are now underway to build an underground rail system.

On ordinary buses there is a fixed fare within the city centre, while on air-conditioned buses fares are calculated according to the distance travelled. Street maps with full details of all the bus routes are readily available from book shops and hotels in Bangkok, while route maps in English are also now posted at many bus stops. Buses are frequent, although often overcrowded, fares are cheap and, with exclusive bus lanes on some busy roads, the public transport system somehow manages to run reasonably efficiently amid the general chaos of Bangkok traffic.

Taxis offer a less stressful way of travelling around. To hail a taxi you should raise your hand and signal to the driver with a beckoning motion with the fingers pointing *downwards*. All taxis in central Bangkok are air conditioned and have meters, thus making it unnecessary to haggle over the price. Before getting into a vehicle, you do, however, need to enquire whether the driver is prepared to take you to your destination (he may decide that the traffic is just too bad to go that way). It is not a bad idea to check, also, that he knows the place you want to go to. Although tipping is not customary, many passengers round up the meter price. As your Thai improves, you may find that a taxi journey offers an excellent opportunity for a spot of conversation practice. Polite conversation is out of the question if you go by **samlor** (literally, ‘three wheels’); you will also have to negotiate the price with the driver *before* stepping into the vehicle. Beware of causing offence by placing your feet against the rail behind the driver’s seat; to do so is extremely bad manners and is likely to disturb your driver’s concentration – with potentially disastrous consequences.

Many of the major roads in Bangkok have small roads or lanes – called **soy** (spelt *soi* in English) – leading off them. These are usually residential areas with a few small shops and vary in length from a couple of hundred metres to a kilometre or more. If you are negotiating a price with a tuk-tuk driver it can obviously make some difference as to whether you intend to get off at the entrance to the soi (**bpàhk soy**), the middle (**glahng soy**) or the end (**sòOt soy**).

▶ Key phrases and expressions

How to ask a taxi or tuk-tuk driver:

- if he knows X
róo-jùk X mái? รู้จัก X ไหม
- if he will take you to X
bpai X mái? ไป X ไหม
- how much he will charge to go to X
bpai X tâo-rài? ไป X เท่าไร
X bpai tâo-rài? X ไป เท่าไร

How to tell a taxi or tuk-tuk driver:

- the fare is too expensive and suggest an alternative
pairng bpai nòy แพงไปหน่อย
X (bàht) dái mái? X(บาท)ได้ไหม
- to go into the soi
kâo soy krúp (kâ) เข้าซอยครับ (ค่ะ)
- to go to the entrance/middle/end of the soi
bpai bpàhk/glahng/ ไปปาก/กลาง/
sòOt soy krúp (kâ) สูดซอยครับ (ค่ะ)
- to turn left/right
léc-o sái/kwäh krúp (kâ) เลี้ยวซ้าย/ขวาครับ (ค่ะ)
- to stop here/over there
jòrt tée-nêe/têe-nóhn จอดที่นี่/ที่โน่น
- to go straight on
ler-ee bpai èek เลยไปอีก

Language notes

1 Reduplication of adjectives

In the first dialogue, Sue tells the taxi driver to park *glâi glâi* (near near) the crossroads. This repetition, or *reduplication*, of an adjective or adverb is a common feature of spoken Thai. It makes the meaning less precise and often corresponds to the English use of *-ish* in *nearish*, *whitish*, *sweetish* and so on:

jòrt glâi glâi sèc yâirk.	<i>Park closish to the crossroads.</i>
rót sèc kâo kâo	<i>a whitish car</i>
sôm wâhn wâhn	<i>sweetish oranges</i>

You will sometimes find street vendors in tourist areas using reduplication in English to assure prospective customers that two items are 'same same' in either quality or price.

2 Numbers

The remaining numbers between ten and 100 are formed in a regular way with the exception of 21, 31, 41 etc., where the word for 'one' is *èt* and not *nèung*. (Remember that 20 is *yêe-sip*.):

21 <i>yêe-sip-èt</i>	41 <i>sèc-sip-èt</i>
22 <i>yêe-sip-sǒrng</i>	42 <i>sèc-sip-sǒrng</i>
23 <i>yêe-sip-sâhm</i>	51 <i>hâh-sip-èt</i>
24 <i>yêe-sip-sèc</i>	52 <i>hâh-sip-sǒrng</i>
25 <i>yêe-sip-hâh</i>	61 <i>hòk-sip-èt</i>
26 <i>yêe-sip-hòk</i>	62 <i>hòk-sip-sǒrng</i>
27 <i>yêe-sip-jèt</i>	71 <i>jèt-sip-èt</i>
28 <i>yêe-sip-bpàirt</i>	72 <i>jèt-sip-sǒrng</i>
29 <i>yêe-sip-gâo</i>	81 <i>bpàirt-sip-èt</i>
31 <i>sâhm-sip-èt</i>	82 <i>bpàirt-sip-sǒrng</i>
32 <i>sâhm-sip-sǒrng</i>	91 <i>gâo-sip-èt</i>
33 <i>sâhm-sip-sâhm</i>	92 <i>gâo-sip-sǒrng</i>

3 Location words: 'here' and 'there'

The basic words for 'here' and 'there' are *têe-nêe* and *têe-nûn* respectively. *têe-nôhn* suggests something further away – 'over there' – while *dtrong-nêe* is a more immediate 'right here'.

4 Place names

Individual place names follow the noun identifying the type of place:

ta-nôn sŏo-kŏom-wít	<i>Sukhumwit Road</i> (road-Sukhumwit)
soy ga-săym-sŭn	<i>Soi Kasemsan</i> (soi-Kasemsan)
rohng rairm ree-noh	<i>Reno Hotel</i> (hotel-Reno)
sa-nâhm gee-lah hàirng châht	<i>National Stadium</i> (stadium-national)
sa-nâhm bin dorn meu-ung	<i>Don Muang Airport</i> (airport-Don Muang)
jung-wùt (province) dtrâht	<i>Trat Province</i> (province-Trat)

5 'Know'

rŏo-jùk means *know* in the sense of being acquainted with people, places or things. A different word, *rŏo*, or the more formal *sâhp*, is used for knowing facts:

<i>rŏo-jùk mâi?</i>	<i>Do you know him?</i>
– <i>mâi rŏo-jùk.</i>	– <i>No.</i>
<i>bpai mâi?</i>	<i>Are you going?</i>
– <i>mâi sâhp / mâi rŏo.</i>	– <i>I don't know.</i>

6 *mâi...ròrk*

The pattern *mâi* + verb/adjective + *ròrk* is used to contradict another person's stated opinion or assumption:

<i>pairng</i>	<i>It's expensive.</i>
– <i>mâi pairng ròrk</i>	– <i>No it isn't.</i>
<i>sŏo-ay ná?</i>	<i>It's pretty, isn't it?</i>
– <i>mâi sŏo-ay ròrk</i>	– <i>No it isn't.</i>
<i>bpai mâi?</i>	<i>Shall we go?</i>
– <i>chún mâi bpai ròrk</i>	– <i>I'm not going.</i>

7 Verb + *lâir-o*

lâir-o has already occurred in the idiomatic expression... *gôr lâir-o gun* (*let's settle for...*) used when negotiating prices. Its most common use, however, is in the pattern verb/adjective + *lâir-o* to indicate that the action of the verb has been completed

or the state of the adjective achieved. Often it can be translated as *already*:

káo bpai láir-o.	<i>He has gone (already).</i>
rao séu láir-o.	<i>We've bought some already.</i>
pôm tum láir-o.	<i>I've done it already.</i>
por (<i>enough</i>) láir-o.	<i>That's enough.</i>
ìm (<i>full up</i>) láir-o.	<i>I'm full up.</i>
tòok (<i>correct</i>) láir-o.	<i>That's correct.</i>

láir-o is also used to link sequences of actions where it might be translated as *and then*:

téung sèe yáirk láir-o lée-o sái.	<i>Reach the crossroads and then turn left.</i>
lée-o sái láir-o lée-o kwäh.	<i>Turn left and then turn right.</i>
lée-o kwäh láir-o jòrt têt-nôhn.	<i>Turn right and then park over there.</i>

8 Yes: krúp and kê

You have already met the polite particles *krúp* and *kê* being used as *yes* answers (unit 2); they are also used as a *yes / right / OK* response to instructions:

lée-o sái krúp.	<i>Turn left.</i>
- krúp.	- OK.
pôm bpai krúp.	<i>I'm going.</i>
- kê.	- OK.

If you listen to a Thai man on a telephone you may hear him saying little more than *krúp . . . krúp . . . krúp . . . krúp*.

Exercises

- ▶ 1 How would you ask a taxi driver if he would take you to the following places:
- Siam Square
 - the Reno Hotel
 - Sukhumwit Road, Soi 39
 - Don Muang Airport (*sa-náhm bin dorn meu-ung*)
- 2 Link the following pairs of sentences with *láir-o*:
- Reach the crossroads. Turn right.
 - Turn left. Go into the soi.
 - Turn right. Park over there.
 - Go to the end of the soi. Park near the red car.

3 Match the numbers in the three columns:

(a) 56	(i) jèt-síp-sèe	A	๓๕
(b) 97	(ii) sèe-síp-sòrng	B	๕๖
(c) 38	(iii) gâo-síp-jèt	C	๗๕
(d) 74	(iv) sâhm-síp-bpàirt	D	๕๗
(e) 42	(v) hâh-síp-hòk	E	๔๗

4 Peter is taking a taxi to a friend's house at the end of Sukhumwit Road, Soi 53. The tuk-tuk driver's words are given. What did Peter say?

Peter	_____.
Tuk-tuk	káo soy mái krúp?
Peter	_____.
Tuk-tuk	bpai sÒOt soy châi mái krúp?
Peter	_____.
Tuk-tuk	gâo-síp bàht krúp.
Peter	_____.
Tuk-tuk	mâi pairng ròrk krúp.
Peter	_____.
Tuk-tuk	kít bpàirt-síp bàht gôr láir-o gun.

5 Translate the following directions into Thai, using a polite particle to convey *please*:

- Park near the crossroads, please.
- Go to the end of the soi, please.
- When you reach the crossroads, turn left, please.
- Park over there near the reddish car, please.

Reading and writing

The words that you learned to read in the first two units were all pronounced with a mid tone. Now it is time to start learning how to read words pronounced with some other tones. By the end of this section you will have begun to read words with high tones, falling tones and low tones. In order to do this, you will have to bear three things in mind when reading a Thai word or syllable: (1) whether the initial consonant is a low-class, mid-class or high-class consonant; (2) whether the vowel is a long vowel or a short vowel; and (3) whether the syllable is a 'dead' syllable or a 'live' syllable.

1 Live syllables and dead syllables

The terms 'live' and 'dead' refer to the way a syllable ends. A 'live' syllable can be prolonged in a droning voice, whereas it is physically impossible to do this with a 'dead' syllable.

Live syllables end either with long vowels (e.g. ah, ai, ao, ee, oo etc.) or a m, n or ng sound, or the short vowels ai and ao. All the words in the script exercises in units 1 and 2 are live syllables. Here are some examples to remind you:

มา นาย ลาว มี ดู นาม งาน ยัง ไป
mah nai lao mee duu nahm ngahn yung bpai

Notice that they are all pronounced with a mid tone.

Dead syllables end with either a short vowel (e.g. i, oo) or a p, t or k sound. Here are some examples:

ติ ดู รัป นิด มาก
dti d'oo rêep nít mâhk

First, you will see that these words are pronounced with different tones; the remainder of this section on the script will explain how the tone of a dead syllable is determined by the class of the initial consonant and the length of the vowel.

Second, notice that in our transcription, ป (b) and ต (d) have been written as p and t. This is because the sounds that can occur at the end of Thai words are quite limited and so certain letters change their pronunciation when they occur at the end of a word.

Here are the consonants you learned in unit 2 once more, indicating how they are pronounced when they occur as an initial consonant and as a final consonant:

	ก	จ	ด	ต	บ	ป	อ
initial	g	j	d	dt	b	bp	(zero)
final	k	t	t	t	p	p	—

A full list of initial and final consonant sounds appears in an appendix.

2 Dead syllables with low-class initial consonants

If the initial consonant in a dead syllable is low class, the tone will be either high or falling; if the vowel is short (e.g. ^๓, ^๔, ^๕) the tone is high:

นิด รัป ลูก
nít rúp lóok

If the vowel is long (e.g. -อ, -า, ^๖, ^๗) the tone is falling:

มาก ยอด รัป ลูป
mâhk yórt rêep lóop

3 Dead syllables with mid-class initial consonants

If the initial consonant in a dead syllable is mid class, the tone will always be low, regardless of whether the vowel is long or short:

กั๊บ จาก ติด ตี้ด จุด จอด
gùp jàhk dtit dèet j'òOt j'òrt

4 Summary of tone rules

The tone rules you have just met are summarized in the following chart. You may find it helpful to make a copy of it to use for reference and checking until you feel completely confident about the rules.

Consonant class	Live syllable	Dead syllable	
		Short vowel	Long vowel
Low class	Mid tone	High tone	Falling tone
Mid class	Mid tone	Low tone	Low tone

Reading practice

Use the summary chart to help you work through these exercises. Don't worry if it takes you some time; if you understand the principles at this stage, you will find that your reading speed will quickly improve. It is well worth taking the time to work through this unit two or three times, rather than to push on to the next with a rather wobbly grasp of how tone rules operate.

▶ 1 Dead or live?

The words following occur in the dialogues. Which of these are live syllables? When you can read all these words, turn back to the dialogues and try to pick them out in the Thai script:

ไป จอด มาก กัน ดี รี่โน ติด โรง

▶ 2 What tone?

The tone mark has been deliberately omitted in the transcription of these Thai words. What tone should they be pronounced with? (Remember, romanized words pronounced with a mid tone have no tone mark.)

บีบ	นาง	กัด	จุด	นัด
beep	nahng	gut	jOOt	nut
ปี่	ดาบ	จาน	จาก	ตาย
bpee	dahp	jahn	jahk	dai
ลาบ	ราว	มีด	รอบ	ปาก
lahp	rao	meet	rorp	bpahk

▶ 3 Words

Practise reading the following words, taking your time to make sure you get the tone correct. Do the exercise several times until you can read through from right to left and top to bottom at a reasonable speed. If you really want to challenge yourself, you can use the recording of this exercise to give yourself dictation practice:

ยาก	มี	นัด	กับ	งาน
ยุ่ง	กัด	มาก	จาก	รีบ
อาย	นอน	ยอม	ลูก	จอด

04

เอาข้าวผัดไก่
I'll have chicken fried rice
ao kâo pút gâi

In this unit you will learn

- how to order drinks and simple meals
- polite requests: kǒr + noun + nòy; kǒr + verb + nòy
- container words and numbers
- where? questions
- location words and prepositions
- consonants: ค ช ฌ ท พ ฟ
- vowels: - - เ- แ-

▶ Dialogues

Peter is taking his two children out for lunch in a coffee shop.

Waitress	เอาอะไรคะ	ao a-rai ká?
Peter	ขอเมนูหน่อยครับ	kǒr doo may-noo nòy krúp.
Waitress	นี่คะ	nêe kâ.
Peter	เอาข้าวผัดไก่สองจานแล้วก็...	ao kào pút gàì sǒrng jahn láir-o gôr...
	บะหมี่น้ำชามหนึ่ง	ba-mèe náhm chahm nèung.
Waitress	แล้วเอาน้ำอะไรคะ	láir-o ao náhm a-rai ká?
Peter	ขอเบียร์สองแก้ว แล้วเบียร์สิงห์ขวดหนึ่ง	kǒr bpép-sêe sǒrng gâir-o láir-o bee-a síng kòo-ut nèung.
Waitress	เบียร์ที่ไม่มีค็อก โคล่าได้ไหม	bpép-sêe mai mee kâ. koh-lah dài mái?
Peter	ได้ครับ	dâi krúp.
Waitress	เอาเบียร์ขวดใหญ่ หรือขวดเล็ก	ao bee-a kòo-ut yài réu kòo-ut lék?
Peter	ขวดใหญ่ครับ เอาน้ำแข็งเปล่า แก้วหนึ่งด้วย	kòo-ut yài krúp. ao núm kǎirng bplào gâir-o nèung dōo-ay.

ao	to want (something)	เอา
kǒr ... (nòy)	I'd like ...	ขอ
doo	to look at	ดู
may-noo	menu	เมนู
nêe kâ	here you are	นี่คะ
kào	rice	ข้าว
pút	to fry; fried	ผัด
gài	chicken	ไก่
sǒrng	two	สอง

jahn	plate	จาน
nèung	one	หนึ่ง
láir-o gôr	and	แล้วก็
ba-mèe	egg noodles	บะหมี่
náhm	water	น้ำ
ba-mèe náhm	egg noodle soup	บะหมี่น้ำ
chahm	bowl	ชาม
bpép-sêe	Pepsi	เบียร์
gâir-o	glass	แก้ว
kòo-ut	bottle	ขวด
bee-a síng	Singha beer	เบียร์สิงห์
dōo-ay	too, also	ด้วย
koh-lâh	Coca-Cola	โคล่า
yài	large	ใหญ่
réu	or	หรือ
lék	small	เล็ก
núm kǎirng	ice	น้ำแข็ง
núm kǎirng bplào	iced water	น้ำแข็งเปล่า

▶ Their meal finished, Peter asks for the bill.

Peter	หนู หนู เก็บสตางค์	nǒo, nǒo gèp dtung.
Waitress	สองร้อยห้าสิบบาทค่ะ	sǒrng róy hâh sip bàht kâ.
Peter	ขอโทษครับ ห้องน้ำอยู่ที่ไหน	kǒr-tòht krúp hōng náhm yòo tēe nǎi?
Waitress	อยู่ข้างบนค่ะ ห้องน้ำผู้ชาย	yòo kǔng bon kâ. hōng náhm pōo-chai
	อยู่ทางซ้าย	yòo tahng sái
	ห้องน้ำผู้หญิง	hōng náhm pōo-yǐng
	อยู่ทางขวา	yòo tahng kwäh.
Peter	ขอบคุณครับ	kòrp-kOOn krúp.

nỗ	(way of addressing young waitresses)	หนู
gèp	to collect, keep	เก็บ
dtung, sa-dtahng	money, satang	สตางค์
hôngg	room	ห้อง
hôngg náhm	toilet, bathroom	ห้องน้ำ
... tēe nãi?	where?	... ที่ไหน
kúng bon	upstairs; on top	ข้างบน
pôo-chai	man	ผู้ชาย
pôo-yǐng	woman	ผู้หญิง
tahng	way	ทาง
tahng kwäh/sái	to the right/left	ทางขวา/ซ้าย

- How many plates of fried rice did Peter order?
- Did he order his children's drinks by the bottle or by the glass?
- Why didn't his children have Pepsi to drink?
- What did Peter have to drink?
- How much did the meal come to?
- Where are the toilets?

i Most Thais eat three meals a day although many will supplement this with snacks throughout the day. Traditionally, rice formed the basis of all three meals and would be accompanied by various side dishes such as fried or pickled vegetables, curry, soup and meat and fish dishes.

Thais living in towns and cities tend to eat out a lot. There are eating places to suit nearly every pocket, ranging from roadside stalls and noodle shops to air-conditioned coffee shops and restaurants. In recent years western fast food restaurants have become increasingly popular in Bangkok.

When you go into a restaurant you will usually find someone waiting attentively to serve you. But if you do need to attract a waiter's attention beckon with your palm uppermost and fingers pointing downwards (as when calling a taxi). If the waiter or waitress is a child, then you can call out **nỗ, nỗ** (literally 'rat, rat' – but also an affectionate way of addressing children!); otherwise it is more appropriate to say **kOOn krúp (ká)**. When you want to pay, you can

say either **chék bin** or **gèp dtung**; although there are no strict rules, the former is more appropriate in air-conditioned restaurants – where tipping is customary – and the latter in noodle shops, where it is unnecessary to tip.

▶ Key phrases and expressions

How to:

- attract a waiter's or waitress's attention
kOOn krúp (ká) คุณครับ (คะ)
- ask for the menu
kǒr doo may-noo nòy ขอเมนูหน่อย
- ask for a glass of iced water
kǒr núm kǎirng bplào ขอน้ำแข็งเปล่า
gâir-o nèung แก้วหนึ่ง
- ask for the bill
gèp dtung krúp (ká) เก็บสตางค์ครับ (ค่ะ)
or
chék bin krúp (ká) เช็คบิลครับ (ค่ะ)

Language notes

1 Polite requests: asking for something

When asking for something, the pattern **kǒr + noun + nòy** (*a little*) is used. However, if the amount of the item requested is specified (e.g. two plates of fried rice, one bottle of beer), **nòy** is replaced by the number expression:

kǒr náhm nòy? Can I have some water?
kǒr náhm sǒrng gâir-o? Can I have two glasses of water?

In both cases, **dâi mái?** can be added at the end of the request for additional politeness:

kǒr náhm nòy dâi mái? Could I have some water?
kǒr náhm sǒrng gâir-o
dâi mái? Could I have two glasses of water?

Note that in restaurants it is perfectly acceptable to use **ao** (*I want*) instead of **kǒr** when ordering.

2 Polite requests: asking to do something yourself

When asking to do something oneself, the pattern *kõr* + verb + *nøy* is used:

kõr doo nøy?	<i>Can I see it?</i>
kõr chim nøy?	<i>Can I taste it?</i>

dài mái? can be added at the end of the request for additional politeness:

kõr doo nøy dài mái?	<i>Could I see it?</i>
kõr chim nøy dài mái?	<i>Could I taste it?</i>
kõr jòrt tée nêe nøy dài mái?	<i>Could I park here?</i>

Remember that *kõr* + verb + *nøy* is only used when asking to do something *yourself*. You cannot use it when asking a waitress to bring the bill or a taxi driver to pull up.

3 Container words

'Uncountable' nouns, such as Coke, rice, coffee and noodles can be counted by the container in which they are purchased or from which they are consumed. The order of words in Thai is noun + number + container word:

koh-lâh sǒrng kòo-ut	<i>two bottles of Coke</i>
kào pút gàì sǎhm jahn	<i>three plates of fried rice</i>
gah-fair sèe tōo-ay	<i>four cups of coffee</i>
ba-mèe náhm hâh chahm	<i>five bowls of noodle soup</i>

However, if the number is *nèung* (*one*), it can occur either before the container word (see above) or after, in the pattern noun + container word + *nèung*; when it occurs after the container word it can be translated by the indefinite article *a/an*:

koh-lâh kòo-ut nèung	<i>a bottle of Coke</i>
kào pút gàì jahn nèung	<i>a plate of fried rice</i>
gah-fair tōo-ay nèung	<i>a cup of coffee</i>
ba-mèe náhm chahm nèung	<i>a bowl of noodle soup</i>

When specifying the size of the container, the word order is noun + container word + adjective:

kào pút gàì jahn yài	<i>a large plate of chicken fried rice</i>
bia sǐng kòo-ut lék	<i>a small bottle of Singha beer</i>

In unit 2 you learned how to ask how much various fruits cost per kilo, using the pattern noun + *loh* + *la* + *tào-rài?* The same basic pattern can be used for asking the price of uncountable nouns, substituting a container word for *loh*:

koh-lâh kòo-ut la tào-rài?	<i>How much is a bottle of Coke?</i>
kào pút gàì jahn la tào-rài?	<i>How much is a plate of fried rice?</i>
gah-fair tōo-ay la tào-rài?	<i>How much is a cup of coffee?</i>

4 Alternative questions: ... or ... ?

The Thai word for *or* is *réu*:

ao bpép-sêe réu núm sôm?	<i>Do you want Pepsi or orange juice?</i>
ao sèe dairng réu sèe kǎo?	<i>Do you want red or white?</i>
yòo tahng sái réu tahng kwǎh?	<i>Is it on the left or the right?</i>

In Thai script *réu* is spelt exactly the same as the question particle *... lǎ?* (unit 2), but in normal speech it is pronounced with a short vowel and a high tone. Many speakers will pronounce the word with an initial *l* rather than *r*.

5 'Water'

The long vowel in *náhm* (*water*) changes to a short vowel when it occurs as the first word in compound nouns (nouns made up of more than one word):

<i>náhm</i>	<i>water</i>	
<i>núm kǎirng</i>	<i>ice</i>	(water + hard)
<i>núm sôm</i>	<i>orange juice</i>	(water + orange)
<i>núm bplah</i>	<i>fish sauce</i>	(water + fish)

But when it is the second word in a compound, the vowel is pronounced long:

<i>hôngng náhm</i>	<i>toilet, bathroom</i>	(room + water)
<i>mâir náhm</i>	<i>river</i>	(mother + water)

6 nǎo

nǎo (*rat*) is widely used as a first-person pronoun (*I*) by young children addressing parents and other adults, and girls and women addressing superiors (such as teachers, bosses or older relatives). It is used as a second-person pronoun (*you*) by parents and adults addressing young children, and people of

higher social status addressing servants, cleaners, waitresses and junior colleagues:

nỗ mãi bpai.	<i>I'm not going.</i> (child speaking)
nỗ kớ doo nòy dái mái?	<i>Could I see it?</i> (child speaking)
nỗ bpai mãi dái.	<i>You can't go.</i> (parent to child)

7 dtung

dtung is a shortened form of 'satang'. It has the more general meaning, 'money' in the expressions **gèp dtung** (literally, *collect the money*) and **mái mee dtung** (*I haven't any money*). The satang is the smallest unit of Thai currency. There are 100 satang in one baht, although today it exists only in the 25-satang and 50-satang coins.

8 'Where?' questions

Where? questions follow the pattern verb + **têe-năi?** (*where?*). Note that **têe-năi?** always occurs at the end of a sentence in Thai:

hôngng náhm yòo têe-năi?	<i>Where is the toilet?</i>
kOOOn tum ngahn têe-năi?	<i>Where do you work?</i>
káo jòrt rôt têe-năi?	<i>Where did he park the car?</i>
lée-o sái têe-năi?	<i>Where do you turn left?</i>

Answers to *where?* questions often take the form verb + **têe** (*at*) + location:

yòo têe-nôhn.	<i>It is over there.</i>
chún tum ngahn têe chee-ung mài.	<i>I work in Chiang Mai.</i>

If the verb is **bpai** (*to go*) or **mah jàhk** (*to come from*), the word **têe** is normally dropped, both in questions and answers:

kOOOn bpai năi?	<i>Where are you going?</i>
- bpai sa-yăhm sa-kwair.	<i>- I'm going to Siam Square.</i>
káo mah jàhk năi?	<i>Where does she come from?</i>
- mah jàhk chee-ung mài.	<i>- She comes from Chiang Mai.</i>

In informal spoken Thai, **têe** is also commonly dropped when the verb is **yòo** (*to be situated at*):

rót yòo năi?	<i>Where's your car?</i>
káo yòo chee-ung mài.	<i>He lives in Chiang Mai.</i>

9 Location words: tahng and kung

Besides **têe**, **tahng** (*way*) and **kung** (*side*) can also be used for describing locations.

tahng is used with **sái** (*left*) and **kwăh** (*right*):

hôngng náhm pôo chai yòo tahng sái.	<i>The men's toilet is on the left.</i>
hôngng náhm pôo ying yòo tahng kwăh.	<i>The ladies' toilet is on the right.</i>

kung commonly occurs before the following prepositions:

bon	<i>on; upstairs</i>
kâhng	<i>side</i>
lâhng	<i>under; downstairs</i>
lũng	<i>behind</i>
nâh	<i>in front (of)</i>
nai	<i>in</i>
nôrk	<i>outside</i>

If a noun follows the preposition, **kung** is normally dropped:

yòo lũng rôt.	<i>It's behind the car.</i>
yòo nai hôngng.	<i>It's in the room.</i>

But if there is no noun after the preposition, **kung** cannot be dropped:

hôngng náhm yòo kung bon.	<i>The toilet is upstairs.</i>
káo bpai kung nôrk.	<i>He has gone outside.</i>

10 Prefix pôo ...

pôo occurs as the first syllable of numerous nouns in Thai, including **pôo-chai** (*man/boy*) and **pôo-ying têe** (*woman/girl*), where it means *person who ...*:

pôo-chai	<i>man/boy</i> (one who is male)
pôo-ying	<i>woman/girl</i> (one who is female)
pôo-yài	<i>adult</i> (one who is big)
pôo-rái	<i>criminal</i> (one who is bad)
pôo-jút-gahn	<i>manager</i> (one who arranges things)
pôo-bor-ri-hănh	<i>administrator</i> (one who administers)

Exercises

1 How would you ask for the following?

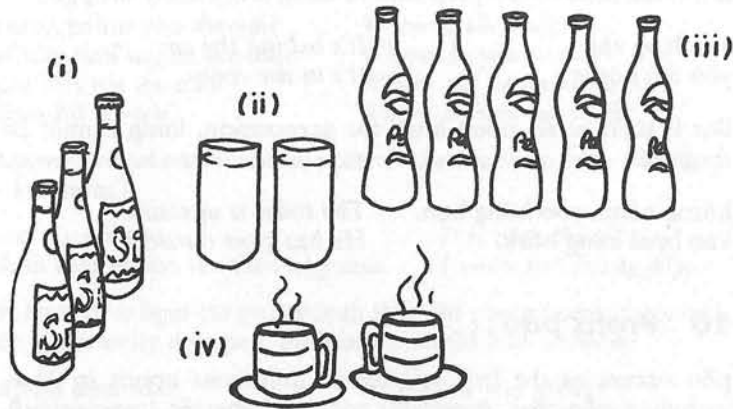
- (a) the menu
- (b) three plates of chicken fried rice
- (c) two bottles of Singha beer
- (d) a glass of water
- (e) the bill

2 How would you ask to do the following?

- (a) to see something
- (b) to taste something
- (c) to park your car over there

3 Match the following orders with the right drinks:

- (a) bép-sêe hâh kòo-ut
- (b) bee-a sǐng sǎhm kòo-ut
- (c) núm kǎirng bplào sǒrng gâir-o
- (d) gah-fair sǒrng tôo-ay

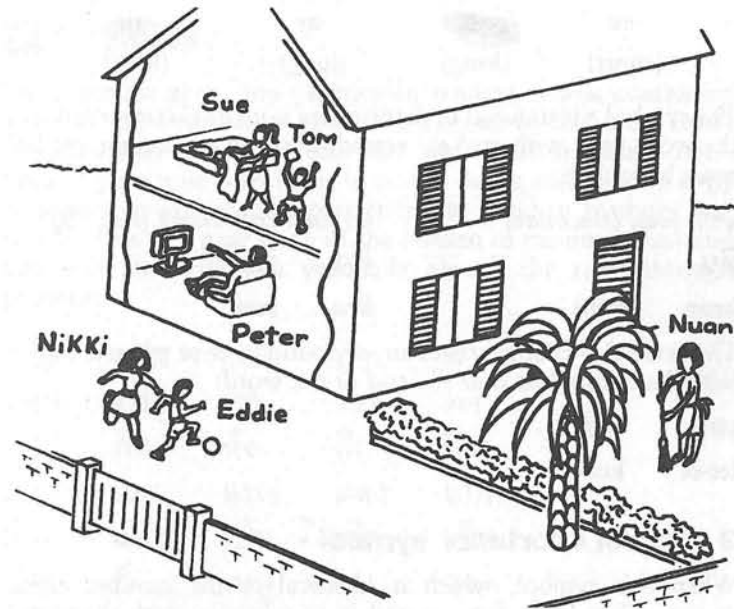


4 How would you ask where the following are?

- (a) Siam Square
- (b) the Reno Hotel
- (c) the toilet
- (d) Sukhumwit Road Soi 33
- (e) Khun Malee

5 Use the picture to make up sentences describing where members of the family are:

- (a) ... yòo kung nai
- (b) ... yòo kung nôrk
- (c) ... yòo kung bon
- (d) ... yòo kung lǎhng
- (e) ... yòo kung nâh
- (f) ... yòo kung lǔng/kung kǎhng



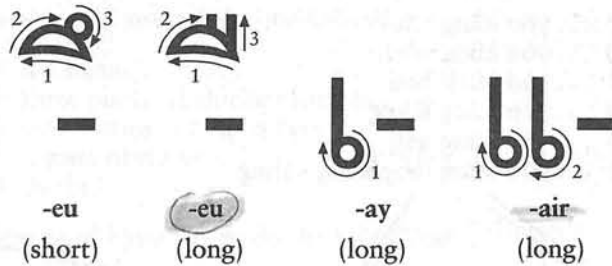
Reading and writing

1 Consonants

The new consonants in this unit are all low-class consonants (like those in unit 1). Be careful not to confuse ก (k) with ด (d) which you learned in unit 2; ช (ch) and ส (s) also look very similar, although the latter has an additional 'notch' on its left 'arm':



▶ 2 Vowels



The symbol ^๕ is unusual in that if there is no final consonant (i.e. the word ends with an ‘eu’ sound) the zero consonant symbol must be added:

<i>with final consonant</i>		<i>no final consonant (add -๕)</i>	
คีน	มีด	คือ	มี๕
keun	mêut	keu	meu

The symbol ๖- changes from an -ay sound to er-ee when it occurs with the consonant ๗ at the end of the word:

เลย	เคย
ler-ee	ker-ee

3 Vowel shortener symbol ๘

When this symbol, which is identical to the number eight, appears above a consonant and in conjunction with the vowel symbols ๖- and ๗- the vowels change from long vowels to short vowels; it also occurs above the letter ๗ with no accompanying written vowel, in which case the syllable is pronounced gôr:

เป็น	เล็ก	เก็บ	แซ็ก	กั
bpen	lék	gèp	cháirk	gôr

4 Words with no vowel symbol

When a word consists of two consonant symbols with no written vowel symbol, a short o vowel must be supplied:

คน	มด	จน	กต
kon	mót	jon	gòt

Remember that the tone rules from unit 3 have to be applied. *kon* and *mót* both begin with a low-class consonant, but *mót* has a high tone because it is a dead syllable and the vowel is short. *gòt* has a mid-class initial consonant and, because it is a dead syllable, it is pronounced with a low tone.

Reading practice

▶ 1 Words

This exercise gives you practice in reading words containing some of the new letters you have learned in this unit. Don't forget to distinguish between ‘live’ and ‘dead’ syllables! Look back to your tone rules chart in unit 3. Better still, make a copy of it so that you can keep referring to it when reading Thai words. This will ease some of the burden of memorization and you will find that you gradually absorb the rules through practice.

ชาย	ชาม	ชอย	บาท	คำ
ขอบ	ทาง	พา	พัก	ท่า
ทุก	คีน	ดึง	ตึก	คือ
เคย	เลย	แพง	แดง	แปด
เย็น	เล็ก	เป็น	เจ็ด	เก็บ
เปิด	กั	เมนู	คน	ลง

▶ 2 Some short sentences

แปด	แปดบาท	แปดบาทแพง	แปดบาทแพงไป
จีน	คนจีน	เป็นคนจีน	ลุงเป็นคนจีน
ไป	มากไป	เจ็ดจานมากไป	กินเจ็ดจานมากไป

3 Public signs

You may not be able to read very much Thai yet, but already you can make practical use of what you do know. You can, for example:

(i) choose the cheapest bottle of beer:



(a) ๔๙ บาท (b) ๗๓ บาท (c) ๖๕ บาท

(ii) find your way to your friend's house on Soi 19:

(a) ซอย ๑๕ (b) ซอย ๑๗ (c) ซอย ๑๙

(iii) go through the correct door at restaurant toilets:

(a) ชาย (b) หญิง

How are you progressing?

One of the potentially frustrating things about learning to read and write Thai is that you have to absorb so many rules initially before you can read even the simplest dialogue or passage. One good piece of news, however, is that once you have learned these rules, you will find that in Thai there is a much closer match between the spelling of a word and the way it is pronounced than there is in English. Another good piece of news is that you are nearly halfway there. By the end of unit 8 you should be able to read most of the dialogues in the book and by unit 10 you will be attempting special reading passages. So keep working through the script sections, retracing your steps if necessary, reviewing earlier material until it becomes second nature, and 'doodling' until your writing becomes reasonably elegant.

05

tǎi-r-o née mee
bprai-sa-nee mái?
is there a post office
around here?
แถวนี้ไปรษณีย์ไหม

In this unit you will learn

- simple post office transactions
- more questions about the location of things
- noun classifiers
- want and want to
- consonants: ข ฉ ถ ผ ฝ ฐ ส ษ ฑ

Dialogues

Sue is trying to find out if there is a post office nearby.

Sue	ขอโทษค่ะ แถวนี มีไปรษณีย์ไหม	kör-tóht ká täir-o nêe mee bprai-sa-nee mái?
Passer-by	ไปรษณีย์หรือ มีค่ะ อยู่ชอย ๑ โกลี่ ๆ ธนาคารกรุงเทพ ฯ	bprai-sa-nee lër? mee kâ. yòo soy nèung glâi glâi ta-na-kahn grOOng-tâyp.
Sue	ไกลไหมค่ะ	glai mái ká?
Passer-by	ไม่ไกลหรอกค่ะ เดินไปทางนี้ สักสองสามนาที เท่านั้น	mâi glai ròrk kâ. dern bpai tahng nêe sùk sörng sähm nah-tee tâo-nún.
Sue	ขอบคุณมากค่ะ	kòrp-kOOn máhk kâ.
Passer-by	ไม่เป็นไรค่ะ	mâi bpen rai kâ.

täir-o nêe	(in) this vicinity	แถวนี้
bprai-sa-nee	post office	ไปรษณีย์
ta-na-kahn	bank	ธนาคาร
grOOng-tâyp	Bangkok	กรุงเทพ ฯ
glai	far	ไกล
dern	walk	เดิน
tahng nêe	this way	ทางนี้
sùk	(see Language notes)	สัก
sörng sähm	two or three; a few	สองสาม
nah-tee	minute	นาที
tâo-nún	only	เท่านั้น
mâi bpen rai	never mind	ไม่เป็นไร

Sue is at the post office to send some postcards and a package.

Sue	ไปรษณีย์ส่ง ไปอังกฤษเท่าไรคะ	bpóht-gáht sòng bpai ung-grit tâo-rài ká?
PO clerk	สิบสองบาทครึ่ง	sip-sörng bàht krúp.
Sue	เอาแสตมป์สิบสองบาท สี่ดวงค่ะ เดี่ยว ... ต้องการจดหมายอากาศ แผ่นหนึ่งด้วยค่ะ	ao sa-dtairm sip-sörng bàht sèe doo-ung kâ. dëe-o ... dtörng-gahn jòt-mâi ah-gàht pàirn nèung dōo-ay kâ.
PO clerk	หกสิบบาทครึ่ง	hòk-sip bàht krúp.
Sue	แล้วนี่ส่งไป อเมริกาเท่าไรคะ	láir-o nêe sòng bpai a-may-ri-gah tâo-rài ká?
PO clerk	ส่งไปทางอากาศ หรือทางเรือครึ่ง	sòng bpai tahng ah-gàht réu tahng reu-a krúp?
Sue	ทางอากาศค่ะ อยาก จะลงทะเบียนด้วย	tahng ah-gàht kâ. yàhk ja long ta-bee-un dōo-ay.
PO clerk	ร้อยเจ็ดสิบบาทครึ่ง ...	róy-jèt-sip bàht krúp ...
Sue	ทั้งหมดเท่าไรคะ	túng mòt tâo-rài ká?

bpóht-gáht	postcard	ไปรษณีย์
sòng	send	ส่ง
doo-ung	(classifier for stamps)	ดวง
dëe-o ...	wait a moment	เดี๋ยว ...
jòt-mâi ah-gàht	aerogramme	จดหมายอากาศ
pàirn	(classifier for aerogrammes)	แผ่น
sa-dtairm	stamp	แสตมป์
a-may-ri-gah	America	อเมริกา
tahng ah-gàht	by air	ทางอากาศ
tahng reu-a	by sea	ทางเรือ
yàhk (ja)	to want to	อยาก(จะ)
long ta-bee-un	register	ลงทะเบียน

- 1 Where is the nearest post office for Sue?
- 2 What is near the post office?
- 3 How long will it take Sue to walk there?
- 4 How many postcards is Sue going to send to England?
- 5 How many aerogrammes does she buy?
- 6 Does she plan to send the package to America by air or sea?

i It is unrealistic at this stage to expect to be able to understand complicated directions given in Thai. Asking directions, however, is an excellent way of practising speaking Thai with strangers, even if you don't always catch the answer. You can always start by asking the way to somewhere you know, so that you can say 'thank you' and walk off confidently in the right direction even if you actually understood very little. Repeat the exercise a number of times, however, and you will find your listening skills steadily improve.

Post offices in Thailand are open from 8.30 a.m. to 4.30 p.m. on weekdays but are closed at weekends. In Bangkok, the Central Post Office, located on New Road, is open on both Saturday and Sunday. Post office facilities are available in many of the larger Bangkok hotels and also on university campuses.

▶ Key phrases and expressions

How to:

- 1 ask if there is . . . in the vicinity
tǎir-o née mee . . . mái? แถวนี้มี . . . ไหม
- 2 express and acknowledge thanks
kòrp-kOOn (mâhk) ขอขอบคุณ (มาก)
mâi bpen rai ไม่เป็นไร
- 3 ask how much it costs to send X somewhere
X sòng bpai . . . tâo-rài? X ส่งไป . . . เท่าไร
- 4 ask how much it costs to send X by air
X sòng bpai X ส่งไป
tahng ah-gàht tâo-rài? ทางอากาศเท่าไร
- 5 ask to send something by registered mail
yàhk ja long ta-bee-un อยากจะลงทะเบียน

Language notes

1 Location word: tǎir-o

The question tǎir-o née mee . . . mái? is used for asking whether something is located in the vicinity. In statements you will quite often hear the noun tǎir-o reduplicated to convey a sense of vagueness about the location of something:

káo jòrt rôt tǎir-o tǎir-o He parked in the Soi
soy sǎhm-síp. 30 area.
yòo tǎir-o tǎir-o bahng lum-poo. It is in the Banglamphu area.

2 Bangkok

The Thai word for *Bangkok* is grOOng-tâyp which can be translated as 'City of Angels'. This is a hugely abbreviated form of the full name of the city, which is recorded in the *Guinness Book of Records* as the world's longest place name. 'Bangkok' was the name of a small village on the Chao Phya River which became Thailand's capital after 1782.

3 Location words: 'near' and 'far'

To any westerner learning Thai it seems particularly perverse that two words with opposite meanings should sound almost identical. To a Thai, of course, there is a world of difference between glâi *near* and glai *far*. But if you have difficulty hearing the difference between mid tones and falling tones, don't despair; you will often hear the *near* word in its reduplicated form, glâi glâi.

4 Direction verbs

The verbs pay (*to go*) and mah (*to come*) occur after a number of verbs to show whether the action is directed towards or away from the speaker. They commonly occur with verbs of motion, such as *walk, run, fly, move house* and also *to telephone*. The first two examples, taken from this unit, indicate movement away from the speaker; the second two indicate movement towards the speaker, examples of which you will meet in later units:

dern bpai tahng née. Walk this way.
sòng bpai ung-grìt tâo-rài? How much does it cost to send
to England?

mah-lee toh mah.
rao yái mah yòo têe nêe.

Malee telephoned.
We moved here.

5 sùk + number + classifier

The word *sùk* occurs in the pattern *sùk* + number + classifier (+ *tâo-nún*) to convey the idea of 'just' or 'as little/few as'. It usually does not need to be translated in English. When *sùk* occurs immediately before the classifier, then the omitted number word is understood to be *one*. *sùk* also occurs with the question word *tâo-rài*:

sùk sǒrng sǎhm nah-tee tâo-nún (just) two or three minutes
rao gin bia sùk kòo-ut We had a bottle of beer
sǒrng kòo-ut. or two.
sùk tâo-rài? how much?

6 mái bpen rai

mái pen rai is an idiomatic expression meaning *never mind, don't worry about it, it doesn't matter*. The phrase is often cited by both Thais and foreigners alike as evidence of Thais' 'easy-going' attitude to life; it can also be used as a response to *kòrp-kOOn* (*thank you*), when it means *you're welcome, don't mention it*.

7 Classifiers

One striking difference between Thai and English is the way nouns and numbers are combined. In unit 4 we noted how uncountable nouns could be counted by the container, just as in English (e.g. *three plates of fried rice*) and that the word order in Thai was noun + number + container (i.e. *fried rice-three-plate*).

When it comes to countable nouns, like *stamps, mangoes, doctors*, Thai follows this same basic pattern, replacing the container word with a special category of words, called classifiers, in the pattern noun + number + classifier:

sa-dtairm sèe doo-ung four stamps (stamp-four-classifier for stamps)
jòt-mái ah-gàht sǒrng pàirn two aerogrammes (aerogrammes-two-classifier for aerogrammes)
ma-môo-ung hòk bai six mangoes
mǒr jèt kon seven doctors

However *nèung* (*one*), as in the case of container words in unit 4, can occur either before the classifier or after (i.e. noun + classifier + *nèung*) when it occurs after the classifier it can be translated by the indefinite article, *a/an*:

sa-dtairm doo-ung nèung a stamp
kǒr ma-môo-ung bai nèung. I'd like a mango, please.

Some common classifiers and nouns they are used with include:

<i>bai</i>	<i>individual fruits, eggs, bowls, slips of paper</i>
<i>doo-ung</i>	<i>stamps, stars, lights</i>
<i>dtoo-a</i>	<i>animals</i>
<i>hàirng</i>	<i>places</i>
<i>hôngng</i>	<i>rooms</i>
<i>kon</i>	<i>people</i>
<i>kun</i>	<i>vehicles</i>
<i>lêm</i>	<i>books</i>
<i>lǔng</i>	<i>houses</i>
<i>lòok</i>	<i>fruit</i>
<i>pàirn</i>	<i>aerogrammes, flat objects</i>
<i>un</i>	<i>small objects</i>

All container words and measure words such as *kilometre, kilogram, day* and so on, can also be regarded as classifiers.

8 'Want' and 'want to'

(a) *yàhk* (*ja*) is an auxiliary verb, meaning *want to, would like to*; *ja* is optional. *yàhk* (*ja*) is followed by another verb:

pǒm yàhk (*ja*) *bpai dôo-ay.* I want to go, too.
káo mái yàhk (*ja*) *mah.* He doesn't want to come.

Would you like to . . . ? questions are answered *yàhk* (*yes*) or *mái yàhk* (*no*):

káo yàhk (*ja*) *bpai dôo-ay mái?* Does he want to go, too?
- yàhk/mái yàhk. - Yes/no.

kOOn yàhk (*ja*) *lorng chim mái?* Do you want to try tasting it?
- yàhk/mái yàhk. - Yes/no.

(b) The verb *ao* also means *want*, but it is followed by a noun:

chún ao bpép-sêe sǒrng kòo-ut. I want two bottles of Pepsi.
káo ao jòt-mái ah-gàht pàirn nèung. He wants an aerogramme.

(c) dtông-gahn can be either the auxiliary verb *want/need to*, when it is followed by a verb, or it can mean *need/want* and be followed by a noun:

káo dtông-gahn long ta-bee-un. *He wants/needs to register.*
chún dtông-gahn sa-dtairm *I need a stamp.*
doo-ung nêung.

9 Verb serialization

One way in which Thai differs markedly from English is the use of noun classifiers; another difference is the way in which several verbs can follow one another in Thai without any intervening words. By using a directional verb (e.g. bpai or mah) and an auxiliary verb (e.g. yàhk (ja) or dtông-gahn) we can construct simple three-verb sentences:

rao yàhk dern bpai. *We'd like to walk.*
(we-want-walk-go)
chún dtông-gahn sòng bpai. *I need to send it.*
(I-need-send-go)

This process of stringing a number of verbs together is called verb serialization. Series of four or five verbs are normal in Thai, but longer combinations are possible.

Exercises

- ▶ 1 How would you ask if there was one of the following in the vicinity:
- post office
 - bank
 - toilet
 - telephone (toh-ra-sùp)
- 2 How would you:
- ask how much it costs to send a postcard to America?
 - ask how much it costs to send something by airmail?
 - ask for five twelve-baht stamps?
 - ask for one aerogramme?
 - ask how much it all comes to?
- 3 Supply the correct classifier in these phrases:
- sa-dtairm sùp bàht hâh . . .
 - jòt-măi ah-gàht . . . nêung

- ga-fair sǒrng . . .
- káo pùt gài . . . nêung
- hông náhm sǎhm . . .
- núk sèuk-sǎh . . . nêung

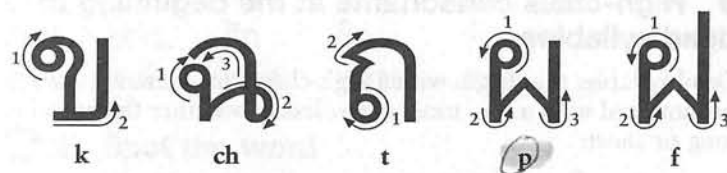
4 How would you say:

- I would like to park over there.
- I would like to go to Siam Square.
- I would like an aerogramme.
- I would like fried rice.

Reading and writing

▶ 1 Consonants

All the new consonants in this unit are high-class consonants. High-class consonants are pronounced with an inherent rising tone; so when reading the following letters, we would say kǒr, chǒr, tǒr, pǒr etc. You will notice that there are three different high-class 's' symbols. Of these, the most common is the third, with the first two appearing mainly in words of foreign origin.



If you compare the consonants in this unit with the low-class consonants you met in unit 4, you will see that they can be paired up. The basic consonant sound is the same with only the inherent rising tone distinguishing the high-class consonants from the low-class consonants.

low class	ค	ช	ท	พ	ฟ	ฐ
	kor	chor	tor	por	for	sor
high class	ก	ฅ	ถ	ผ	ฝ	ศ, ษ, ฐ
	kōr	chōr	tōr	pōr	fōr	sōr

2 High-class consonants at the beginning of live syllables

Live syllables with an initial high-class consonant are pronounced with a *rising* tone:

ชาย ผม สอง
kǎi pōm sōrng

A rare exception is the female word for *I*, *di-chún* and *chún* where the tone on *chún* is high.

ดิฉัน ฉัน
di-chún chún

3 High-class consonants at the beginning of dead syllables

Dead syllables that begin with a high-class consonant are always pronounced with a *low* tone, regardless of whether the vowel is long or short:

หก สิบ ถูก ขาด
hòk sìp tòok kǎht

4 Silent ห at the beginning of a word

There are a number of words in Thai that are spelt with an initial ห which is not pronounced. The function of this 'silent h' is to convert the consonant that follows into a high-class consonant. All such words then follow the tone rules of words with an initial high-class consonant:

ไหน หยุด หลอด
nǎi yòOt lòrt

An important exception to note is the question particle *mái?* which is spelt as if it should have a rising tone, although in normal speech is pronounced with a high tone: ไหม *mái?*

5 Summary of tone rules

The tone rules for syllables and words with initial high-class consonants can be summarized as follows:

Consonant class	Live syllable	Dead syllable	
		Short vowel	Long vowel
High class	Rising tone	Low tone	Low tone

Reading practice

▶ 1 Words

Here are some common words that begin with a high-class consonant. The live syllables will have a rising tone and dead syllables a low tone. Read through the exercise several times until you can do it quickly and accurately.

ชาย ขอ ขับ ฝึก ถ้าม
ถูก ผิด ผาก สี่ สุด
สอน สาว สัก สิบ หัก
หา หลัง หวัด หลาย หนู

▶ 2 Spot the word

You should now be able to read all these words from the dialogues. Turn back to the beginning of this unit and try to find each one without referring to the romanized section.

ขอโทษ แถว มี ไหม* หรือ
ชอย หรอก ไป ทาง สัก
สอง สาม นาที่ มาก เป็นไร
สิบสอง บาท ทาง อากาศ จดหมาย
อเมริกา** ลง เจ็ดสิบ หมด

* Remember, this is pronounced with a high tone in normal speech.

** 'zero' consonant at the beginning of this word is pronounced a.

3 Match the numbers

- | | |
|---------|----------|
| (i) ๒ | (a) แปด |
| (ii) ๓ | (b) หก |
| (iii) ๖ | (c) สิบ |
| (iv) ๗ | (d) สาม |
| (v) ๘ | (e) เจ็ด |
| (vi) ๑๐ | (f) สอง |

4 Sentences

Read across the page, building up to four-word sentences:

ไทย*	คนไทย	เป็นคนไทย	สูงเป็นคนไทย
ตาก	จังหวัดตาก	จากจังหวัดตาก	มาจากจังหวัดตาก
มาก	หลานมาก	มีหลานมาก	ยายมีหลานมาก
คน	สิบคน	ลูกสิบคน	มีลูกสิบคน
คน	สามคน	สาวสามคน	ลูกสาวสามคน

* Note that the final consonant is redundant in this word.

05

**kǒr pòot gúp . . . nòy,
dǎi mǎi?**

could I speak to . . . , please?

ขอพูดกับ . . . หน่อย ได้ไหม

In this lesson you will learn

- the language of telephone transactions
- who? questions
- when? questions
- talking about the future:
ja + verb
- verbs of thinking and saying
with wâh
- script review

Dialogues

Sue is telephoning Malee, but it is the maid at Malee's home who picks up the receiver.

Sue	ฮันโล ขอพูดกับ คุณมาลีหน่อย ได้ไหมคะ	hun-loh kôr pòot gúp kOOn mah-lee nòy dài mái ká?
Maid	ใครพูดคะ	krai pòot ká?
Sue	ฉัน Sue พูดค่ะ	chún Sue pòot ká.
Maid	ใครนะ ช่วยพูดตั้ง ๆ หน่อยได้ไหม สายไม่ดี	krai ná? chôo-ay pòot dung dung nòy dài mái? sǎi mái dee.
Sue	ค่ะ ฉัน Sue พูดค่ะ เป็นเพื่อนคุณมาลี	ká. chún Sue pòot ká. bpen péu-un kOOn mah-lee.
Maid	รอสักครู่นะคะ... คุณมาลีไม่อยู่ค่ะ ออกไปข้างนอกแล้ว	ror sùk krôo ná ká... kOOn mah-lee mái yòo ká. òrk bpai kúng nôrk láir-o.
Sue	อ้อ หรือคะ จะกลับมาเมื่อไรคะ	òr lér ká? ja glúp mah méu-rài ká?
Maid	ไม่ทราบค่ะ คิดว่าจะกลับมาตอนบ่าย	mái sâhp ká. kít wâh ja glúp mah dtorn bài.
	ตอนบ่ายโทรมาใหม่นะคะ	dtorn bài toh mah mài ná ká.
Sue	ค่ะ ขอขอบคุณค่ะ สวัสดีค่ะ	ká. kòrp-kOOn ká. sa-wùt dee ká.

hun-loh	hello (on telephone)
pòot	to speak
krai	who?
dung	loud
sǎi	(telephone) line
dee	good
mái dee	bad
péu-un	friend
ror	to wait
krôo	a moment
òrk	to go out
kúng nôrk	outside
ja	(future time marker)
glúp	to return
méu-rài?	when?
sâhp	to know
kít	to think
wâh	(see Language notes)
dtorn	period of time
bài	afternoon
dtorn bài	afternoon
toh	to telephone
mài	again; new

ฮันโล
พูด
ใคร
ดัง
สาย
ดี
ไม่ดี
เพื่อน
รอ
ครู่
ออก
ข้างนอก
จะ
กลับ
เมื่อไร
ทราบ
คิด
ว่า
ตอน
บ่าย
ตอนบ่าย
โทร
ใหม่

▶ Peter is trying to call Khun Somchai, but Somchai's daughter answers.

Daughter	ฮันโล	hun-loh.
Peter	ฮันโล ที่โน่นบ้านคุณ สมชายใช่ไหมครับ	hun-loh. têe-nôhn bâhn kOOn sǒm-chai châi mái krúp?
Daughter	ใช่ค่ะ แต่คุณพ่อไม่อยู่ค่ะ ไปทำงานแล้ว	châi kâ. dtàir kOOn pǒr mâi yòo kâ. bpai tum ngahn láir-o.
Peter	อ้อ หรือครับ	ǒr lěr krúp?
Daughter	คุณต้องการ เบอร์ โทรศัพท์มือถือไหม	kOOn dtǒrng-gahn ber toh-ra-sùp meu tǔu mái?
Peter	ไม่เป็นไรครับ ตอนเย็นจะโทรมาใหม่ ช่วยบอกคุณพ่อว่า Peter เพื่อนฝรั่งโทรมา	mâi bpen rai krúp. dtorn yen ja toh mah mài. chǒo-ay bǒrk kOOn pǒr wâh Peter pǔu-un fa-rùng toh mah.
Daughter	ค่ะ	kâ.
Peter	ขอบคุณมากครับ สวัสดิ์ครับ	kǒrp-kOOn mâhk krúp. sa-wùt dee krúp.

bâhn	house, home	บ้าน
dtàir	but	แต่
yòo	to be in (e.g. home, work)	อยู่
ber	number	เบอร์
toh-ra-sùp	telephone	โทรศัพท์
toh-ra-sùp meu tǔu	mobile phone	โทรศัพท์มือถือ
dtorn yen	evening	ตอนเย็น
bǒrk	to tell	บอก
pǒr	father	พ่อ
fa-rùng	westerner, farang	ฝรั่ง

- 1 Why does the maid have a problem understanding Sue?
- 2 How does Sue describe herself to the maid?
- 3 Where is Malee?
- 4 When does the maid think she will be back?
- 5 What does she advise Sue to do?
- 6 Where is Somchai?
- 7 What does Somchai's daughter offer to give Peter?
- 8 What does Peter decide to do?
- 9 What message does he leave?

i At this stage any telephone transactions you might need to make in Thai will probably be limited to asking to speak to someone.

The word **toh-ra-sùp** in Thai is both the noun *telephone* and the verb *to telephone*. As a verb it is often shortened to **toh**. You will see this abbreviated form at the end of newspaper advertisements – the equivalent of 'tel.'

The English word 'hello' is used at the beginning of phone calls and the Thai greeting/farewell **sa-wùt dee** at the end. When giving telephone numbers or extension numbers, Thais usually use the word **toh** for 'two' instead of **sǒrng** as it is felt that **sǒrng** and **sǎhm** 'three' might easily be confused over the phone. **toh** is Sanskrit* for 'two'. Although it is pronounced the same way as the abbreviated word for *to telephone* it is spelt differently:

โทร.	โท
tel.	two

* Sanskrit is the language of classical India from which Thai has borrowed many words in the same way that English has borrowed from Latin.

▶ Key phrases and expressions

- 1 Could I speak to . . . , please?
kǒr pōot gúp kOOn . . . ขอพูดกับคุณ . . .
nòy dài mái? หน่อยได้ไหม
- 2 Who's speaking, please?/Is that . . . ?
krai pōot krúp (ká)? ใครพูดครับ (คะ)
têe-nôhn . . . ที่โน่น . . .
châi mái krúp (ká)? ใช่ไหมครับ (คะ)

- 3 This is ... speaking
pǒm (chún) ... pòot ผม (ฉัน) ... พูด
- 4 Could you speak up a little please?
(chôo-ay) pòot dung dung (ช่วย)พูดดัง ๆ
nòy dài mái? หน่อยได้ไหม
- 5 The line is bad/isn't free
sǎi mái dee สายไม่ดี
sǎi mái wâhng สายไม่ว่าง
- 6 Could you hold on a moment, please?
ror sùk krôo รอสักครู่
- 7 Could I have extension ... , please?
kǒr dtòr ber ... ขอต่อเบอร์...
- 8 I'll ring back later
dêe-o ja toh mah mài เดี่ยวจะโทรมาใหม่
- 9 Sorry, I've got the wrong number
kǒr-tòht toh pit ber ขอโทษ โทรผิดเบอร์

Language notes

1 'Who?' questions

The question word *krai* (*who?*) can occur at either the beginning or the end of a sentence, depending on its function. A name alone is often sufficient answer to *krai?* questions, but longer answers follow the same order of words as the question:

krai bòrk káo?	Who told him? (who-tell-he)
- sǒm-chai.	- Somchai.
- sǒm-chai bòrk.	- Somchai did.
- sǒm-chai bòrk káo.	- Somchai told him.
káo bòrk krai?	Who did he tell? (he-tell-who)
- sǒm-chai.	- Somchai.
- bòrk sǒm-chai.	- (He) told Somchai.
- káo bòrk sǒm-chai.	- He told Somchai.

kOOn bpai gùp krai?

- sǒm-chai.
- gùp sǒm-chai.
- bpai gùp sǒm-chai.
- pǒm bpai gùp sǒm-chai.

Who are you going with?
(you-go-with-who)

- Somchai.
- With Somchai.
- (I'm) going with Somchai.
- I'm going with Somchai.

2 Polite requests: asking someone to do something

When asking someone to do something, the pattern *chôo-ay* + verb + *nòy* is used. ... *dài mái?* can be added at the end of the request for additional politeness:

chôo-ay pòot dung dung nòy dài mái?	Please speak up.
chôo-ay bòrk kOOn pôr wâh Peter toh mah.	Please tell your father that Peter rang.

Be careful to distinguish between *chôo-ay* ..., used when asking someone else to do something and *kǒr* ... (unit 4), used when asking to do something oneself:

chôo-ay pòot gùp ... nòy.	Please speak to ...
kǒr pòot gùp ... nòy?	Can I speak to ..., please?
chôo-ay jòrt rót tée-nêe nòy.	Please park here.
kǒr jòrt rót tée-nêe nòy?	Can I park here, please?

3 Possession

There are no special words for *his*, *hers*, *my*, *yours* etc. in Thai. Ownership or possession is expressed by the pattern noun + *kǒrng* (*of*) + owner; the word *kǒrng*, however, is frequently omitted:

bâhn (kǒrng) kOOn sǒm-chai	Khun Somchai's home
bpn pêu-un (kǒrng)	I'm a friend of Malee.
kOOn mah-lee.	

The pattern noun + (*kǒrng* +) *krai* (*who?*) means *whose* ... ?:

rót (kǒrng) krai?	Whose car?
káo bpn pêu-un (kǒrng) krai?	Whose friend is he/who is he a friend of?

4 l'ěr?

You have already met the question particle *l'ěr?* in unit 2; when it occurs on its own, it means 'really?' and can be used both as a genuine expression of surprise and as a bland conversational rejoinder to assure the speaker that you are still listening!

5 Talking about the future: ja + verb

As we have already mentioned, Thai verbs do not change their endings to indicate tense in the same way as verbs in European languages. Often it is only from the context that you can tell whether a Thai is talking about events in the future or the past. When you want to be quite specific about referring to the future, however, add the word *ja* in front of the verb:

<i>káo ja gl'up mah dtorn bài.</i>	<i>She will return in the afternoon.</i>
<i>dtorn yen ja toh mah mài.</i>	<i>I'll ring again in the evening.</i>
<i>p'om ja j'ort rot t'ê soy</i> <i>y'ê-sip g'ao.</i>	<i>I'll park the car on Soi 29.</i>

6 'When?' questions

The question word *m'êu-rài?* (*when?*) normally occurs at the end of a sentence; a time expression alone is often sufficient answer, but this may be preceded by a verb:

<i>ja gl'up mah m'êu-rài?</i>	<i>When will she be back?</i>
<i>– (ja gl'up mah) dtorn bài.</i>	<i>– (She'll be back) in the afternoon.</i>
<i>káo bpai m'êu-rài?</i>	<i>When did he go?</i>
<i>– (káo bpai) dtorn yen.</i>	<i>– (He went) in the evening.</i>
<i>káo toh mah m'êu-rài?</i>	<i>When did he ring?</i>
<i>– (káo toh mah) dtorn cháo.</i>	<i>– (He rang) in the morning.</i>

m'êu-rài? may also occur at the beginning of a sentence, often to convey a sense of urgency or irritation:

<i>m'êu-rài káo ja gl'up mah?</i>	<i>When will she be back?</i>
<i>m'êu-rài káo ja toh mah?</i>	<i>When is he going to ring?</i>
<i>m'êu-rài k'oon ja b'ork káo?</i>	<i>When are you going to tell him?</i>

7 'Know'

sâhp is a polite, formal word for *to know* which you would use when speaking to strangers or people of obviously higher social

status. In less formal situations *r'oo* is widely used. Be careful to distinguish these from *r'oo-j'uk* (unit 3) which means *to know* in the sense of being acquainted with a person or place.

8 Verbs of thinking/saying + wâh

wâh links verbs of speaking (e.g. *b'ork to say*), mental activity (e.g. *k'it to think*) and perception (e.g. *r'oo to know*), to a following clause, like English 'that' in *you said that . . .*, *he thinks that . . .*, *I know that . . .*:

<i>chún k'it wâh ja gl'up mah</i> <i>dtorn bài.</i>	<i>I think he'll be back in the afternoon.</i>
<i>káo b'ork wâh Peter toh mah.</i>	<i>She said that Peter phoned.</i>
<i>p'om r'oo wâh káo mài y'ò.</i>	<i>I know he's not in.</i>

When *wâh* occurs with *b'ork*, it can introduce both indirect and direct speech; in indirect speech it is equivalent to *that* and in direct speech it serves the same function as inverted commas:

<i>káo b'ork wâh (káo) ja</i> <i>mài bpai.</i>	<i>He said (that) he would not go.</i>
<i>káo b'ork wâh (p'om) ja</i> <i>mài bpai.</i>	<i>He said, 'I'm not going.'</i>

Notice that when the pronouns in the second clause are omitted, indirect and direct speech are identical.

9 Parts of the day

dtorn means *section* or *period of time*. It occurs commonly with the words for *morning*, *afternoon*, *evening* etc. Note that when referring to the time when an action takes place, Thai does not need the word for 'in'.

<i>dtorn cháo</i>	<i>morning, in the morning</i>
<i>dtorn bài</i>	<i>afternoon, in the afternoon</i>
<i>dtorn yen</i>	<i>evening, in the evening</i>
<i>dtorn glahng wun</i>	<i>daytime, in the daytime</i>
<i>dtorn glahng keun</i>	<i>night time, at night</i>

Time expressions can occur at the beginning or end of a sentence, as in English:

<i>dtorn yen p'om bpai k'ung n'ork.</i>	<i>In the evening I'm going out.</i>
<i>p'om bpai k'ung n'ork dtorn yen.</i>	<i>I'm going out in the evening.</i>

10 kOOn pôr

Somchai's daughter's use of the title kOOn before pôr is the deferential way of referring to one's own or another person's father:

kOOn pôr yòo mái krúp? *Is your father at home?*
- kOOn pôr bpai tum ngahn láir-o. *- He's gone to work.*

Exercises

1 How would you:

- ask to speak to Malee?
- ask someone to speak a little louder?
- ask someone to hang on for a moment?
- ask who is speaking?
- ask when Malee will return?

2 You are thinking of doing a number of things in the near future. Use pòm/chún kít wâh ja... to state your plans for:

- going out.
- going to the post office in the morning.
- going to Somchai's house in the afternoon.
- returning in the evening.

3 Somchai has told you his plans for the day. Pass on the information to Malee, beginning kOOn sòm-chai bòrk wâh...:

- I'll go to the bank in the morning.
- I'm going to a friend's house in the afternoon.
- I'll park my car in Soi 33.
- I'll return home in the evening.

▶ 4 Ask when Khun Somchai is going to do these things:

- return.
- be in.
- know.
- ring (you).
- tell (you).
- ring and tell (you).

Reading and writing

At this stage it is worth pausing to review the key points that you have learned so far.

1 Consonants

You have learned the following consonants (note that the consonant sound of each letter is given when it occurs both as an initial and as a final consonant):

Low class	น	ม	ง	ร	ล	ย	ว
initial	n	m	ng	r	l	y	w
final	n	m	ng	n	n		
	ค	ช	ซ	ท	พ	ฝ	
initial	k	ch	s	t	p	f	
final	k	t	t	t	p	p	
Mid class	ก	จ	ด	ต	ป	บ	อ
initial	g	j	d	dt	b	bp	zero
final	k	t	t	t	p	p	
High class	ข	ฃ	ฅ	ฝ	ผ	ศ, ส, ฮ	ห
initial	k	ch	t	p	f	s	h
final	k	t	t	p	p	t	

2 Vowels

You have learned the following vowels:

Long vowels	-า	-อ	โ-	-	อ	-	เ-	แ-
	-ah	-or	-oh	-ee	-oo	-eu	-ay	-air
Short vowels	-	เ-	โ-	-	-	-	เ-	แ-
	-u	-ai	-ai	-i	-OO	-eu	-e	-air

3 Live syllables and dead syllables

You have learned the difference between live syllables and dead syllables:

Live syllables	syllables that end with a <i>long vowel</i> or a m, n, ng sound or the short vowels ai and ao . e.g. มี รอ ดู ปี่ ดำ จาน ยัง
Dead syllables	syllables that end with a <i>short vowel</i> or a p, t, k sound. e.g. ดู ตี กด ดับ สิบ จาก หมด

4 Summary of tone rules

Consonant class	Live syllable	Dead syllable	
		Short vowel	Long vowel
Low class	Mid tone	High tone	Falling tone
Mid class	Mid tone	Low tone	Low tone
High class	Rising tone	Low tone	Low tone

5 Reading words

By now, whenever you read a Thai word or syllable, you will have learned to ask yourself three questions: (i) is it a live or dead syllable?, (ii) what class is the initial consonant? and (iii) is the vowel long or short? Once you have answered these questions you should be able to identify the tone of a word correctly.

At this stage, don't worry if you are finding it difficult to memorize the tone rules: simply copy the chart and keep it handy for subsequent lessons (the act of copying itself will help you to memorize it). After a while, you will find you need to refer to it less and less and when you feel ready, you can dispense with it altogether.

▶ Reading practice

ยูปาเป็นคนไทย
มาจากจังหวัดเลย
ดำรงเป็นสามีของยูปา
ดำรงมาจากจังหวัดตาก
ยูปากับดำรงมีลูก ๕ คน
มีลูกชาย ๒ คน มีลูกสาว ๓ คน

สามี	<i>husband</i>
จังหวัด	<i>province</i>
ตาก	<i>name of a province in northern Thailand</i>
เลย	<i>name of a province in northern Thailand</i>
กับ	<i>and, with</i>
ลูกชาย	<i>son</i>
คน	<i>(classifier for people)</i>
ลูกสาว	<i>daughter</i>

- 1 Where does Yupa come from?
- 2 What is her husband's name?
- 3 What province does he come from?
- 4 How many sons do they have?
- 5 How many daughters do they have?

07

kOOn pòot tai gèng you speak Thai well คุณพูดไทยเก่ง

- In this lesson you will learn**
- how to talk about your knowledge of Thai
 - how to talk about actions that happened in the past: ker-ee + verb
 - how to talk about continuous actions: gum-lung + verb + yòo
 - how to compare things
 - tone marks: mái àyk

▶ Dialogues

A taxi driver strikes up a conversation with Peter.

Taxi	คุณเป็นคนอเมริกัน ใช่ไหมครับ	kOOn bpen kon a-may-ri-gun châi mái krúp?
Peter	ไม่ใช่ครับ เป็นคนอังกฤษ	mâi châi krúp. bpen kon ung-grít.
Taxi	อ้อ คนอังกฤษหรือ อยู่เมืองไทยนานไหม	ôr kon ung-grít lër? yòo meu-ung tai nahn mái?
Peter	ไม่นานครับ	mâi nahn krúp.
Taxi	คุณพูดไทยเก่ง	kOOn pòot tai gèng.
Peter	ไม่เก่งหรือครับ พูดได้นิดหน่อยเท่านั้น	mâi gèng ròrk krúp. pòot dâi nít-nòy tâo-nún.
Taxi	เก่งซีครับ มีแฟน คนไทยใช่ไหมครับ	gèng see krúp. mee fairn kon tai châi mái krúp?
Peter	ไม่ใช่ครับ เคยเรียนที่อังกฤษ	mâi châi krúp. ker-ee ree-un tée ung-grít.
Taxi	แล้วคุณอ่านและเขียน ภาษาไทยเป็นไหม	láir-o kOOn àhn láir kée-un pah-sáh tai bpen mái?
Peter	เป็นนิดหน่อยครับ กำลังเรียนอยู่	bpen nít-nòy krúp. gum-lung ree-un yòo.

meu-ung	country (informal); town	เมือง
meu-ung tai	Thailand (informal)	เมืองไทย
nahn	(for) a long time	นาน
gèng	to be good at	เก่ง
nít-nòy	a little bit	นิดหน่อย
tâo-nún	only	เท่านั้น
see	particle	ซี
fairn	husband; wife; partner	แฟน
ker-ee	used to; to have ever done something	เคย
ree-un	to study, learn	เรียน

sörn	to teach	สอน
ahn	to read	อ่าน
kěe-un	to write	เขียน
pah-sáh	language	ภาษา
bpen	can, know how to	เป็น
gum-lung ... yòo	to be in the process of ...	กำลัง ... อยู่

▶ Chanida, meanwhile, is asking Sue how she finds learning Thai.

Chanida	คุณพูดไทยเก่งนะ	kOOn Sue pòot tai gèng ná.
	ภาษาไทยยากไหม	pah-sáh tai yâhk mái?
Sue	ฉันรู้สึกว่าคุณยาก	chún róo-sèuk wâh pòot yâhk
	เพราะว่ามี	prór wâh mee
	เสียงสูงเสียงต่ำ	sěe-ung sǒong sěe-ung dtùm.
	กลัวว่าจะพูดผิดเสมอ	gloo-a wâh ja pòot pít sa-měr.
Chanida	ไม่ต้องกลัวหรอก	mái dtǒrng gloo-a ròrk.
	คุณพูดชัดจริง ๆ	kOOn Sue pòot chít jing jing.
	คุณรู้เรียนที่ไหน	kOOn Sue ree-un tée-nái?
Sue	เคยเรียนที่ลอนดอน	ker-ee ree-un tée lorn-dorn
	คะ ที่มหาวิทยาลัย	kâ. tée ma-hâh-wít-ta-yah-lai.
Chanida	มีคนไทยสอนไหม	mee kon tai sörn mái?
Sue	มีคะ	mee kâ.
Chanida	แล้วคุณรู้ เรียนอ่าน	láir-o kOOn Sue ree-un àhn
	และเขียนด้วยใช่ไหม	láir kěe-un dǒo-ay châi mái?
Sue	ใช่คะ	châi kâ.
	ฝรั่งบางคนคิดว่า	fa-rúng bahng kon kít wâh
	อ่านภาษาไทยยาก	ahn pah-sáh tai yâhk.
	ฉันว่าไม่ค่อยยาก	chún wâh mái kóy yâhk
	เท่าไร ความจริงคิด	tâo-rài. kwahm jing kít
	ว่าอ่านและเขียนง่าย	wâh àhn láir kěe-un ngái
	กว่าพูด	gwâh pòot.

yâhk	difficult	ยาก
róo-sèuk (wâh)	to feel (that)	รู้สึก (ว่า)
prór wâh	because	เพราะว่า
sěe-ung	sound; tone	เสียง
sǒong	high	สูง
dtùm	low	ต่ำ
sěe-ung sǒong	tones	เสียงสูงเสียงต่ำ
sěe-ung dtùm		
gloo-a (wâh)	to be afraid (that)	กลัว (ว่า)
pít	wrong	ผิด
sa-měr	always	เสมอ
dtǒrng	must	ต้อง
mái dtǒrng	there's no need (to)	ไม่ต้อง
chút	clear	ชัด
ma-hâh-wít-ta-yah-lai	university	มหาวิทยาลัย
láir	and	และ
bahng	some	บาง
wâh	to think, say	ว่า
mái kóy ... tâo-rài	not very ...	ไม่ค่อย ... เท่าไร
kwahm jing	(in) truth; actually	ความจริง
ngái	easy	ง่าย
ngái gwâh	easier	ง่ายกว่า

- 1 What wrong assumptions does the taxi driver make about Peter?
- 2 Where did Peter learn Thai?
- 3 Who taught him?
- 4 Can Peter read Thai?
- 5 Why does Sue find it hard to speak Thai?
- 6 What is she afraid of?
- 7 How does Chanida reassure her?
- 8 How easy does Sue find the Thai script?

i One of the most enjoyable aspects of speaking Thai in Thailand is that there always seem to be lots of Thais eager to tell you how well you speak their language. Even the most faltering attempts are likely to prompt a complimentary **pòot tai gèng** (*you speak Thai well*). Such encouragement is a wonderful incentive to practise more. But don't take it too literally. Mutual compliments are an important part of Thai social relations and Thais are simply trying to be friendly and express their appreciation that a foreigner has made an effort to learn something of their language rather than to objectively evaluate his or her linguistic competence. The appropriate response is a suitably modest one of denial such as **mái gèng ròrk** or **bplào** or **pòot dâi nít-nòy tâo-nún**. Generally speaking, it doesn't hurt to compliment Thais on their command of English; unless, of course, they spent their formative years in an English boarding school or have just returned from the United States with an MBA, in which case you risk sounding a little condescending.

Key phrases and expressions

How to say:

- 1 I only speak a little (Thai)

pòot (pah-sáh tai) dâi พูด(ภาษาไทย)ได้
nít-nòy tâo-nún นิดหน่อยเท่านั้น

- 2 I studied it before

ker-ee ree-un เคยเรียน

- 3 I am studying it

gum-lung ree-un กำลังเรียน

- 4 it's difficult to speak because it has tones

pòot yâhk prór wâh mee พูดยากเพราะว่ามี
sêe-ung sǒong sêe-ung dtùm เสียงสูงเสียงต่ำ

- 5 I'm always afraid I'll make a mistake

gloo-a wâh ja pòot pít sa-měr กลัวว่าจะพูดผิดเสมอ

Language notes

1 Countries

meu-ung and **bpra-tâyt** both mean *country* and occur before the name of a specific country; **meu-ung** is the informal word, normally used in conversation, while **bpra-tâyt** is normally used when writing or speaking formally:

meu-ung jeen China
bpra-tâyt yêe-bpÒOn Japan

In informal speech, **meu-ung** is often dropped, although it is never dropped before **tai**:

pòm ker-ee ree-un tée ung-grít. I studied it in England.
yòo meu-ung tai nahn mái? Have you lived in Thailand long?

2 verb + bpen

In unit 1 you met the pattern **bpen** + noun (e.g. **bpen kon ung-grít**) where **bpen** meant *is/are*.

When **bpen** occurs in the pattern verb + **bpen**, the meaning of **bpen** is *to know how to do something* or *can*. When it has this meaning it occurs in the same position, after a verb, as **dâi** (*to be able to do something, can*; see unit 2); verb + **bpen mái?** (*can you . . . ?*) questions are answered **bpen** (*yes*) or **mái bpen** (*no*):

káo pòot pah-sáh tai bpen He speaks/can speak Thai.
chún àhn pah-sáh tai mái bpen I cannot read Thai.
kêe-un pah-sáh tai bpen mái? Can you read and write Thai?
– **bpen/mái bpen** – Yes/no.

3 verb + bpen/dâi + adverb

Adverbs and adjectives are identical in form in Thai; thus **dee** is both the adjective *good* and the adverb *well*. To describe how competently someone can do something, the pattern verb + **bpen/dâi** + adverb can be used:

pòm pòot dâi nít-nòy. I can speak a little.
kOOn kêe-un pah-sáh tai dâi dee. You can write Thai well.
káo àhn pah-sáh tai bpen nít-nòy. She can read Thai a little.

With the adverbs gèng (*expertly*) and klông (*fluently*) it is normal to drop bpen/dái:

káo pòot tai gèng/klông. *He speaks Thai well/fluently.*

4 see

The particle *see* is used in a number of different ways. One use (illustrated in the dialogue) is at the end of a sentence which contradicts a negative statement:

kOOn pòot tai gèng. *You speak Thai well.*
– mǎi gèng ròrk krúp. *– No I don't.*
gèng see krúp. *Yes you do.*

dern bpai mǎi glai. *It's not far to walk.*
– glai see. *– Yes it is.*

mǎi pairng. *It's not expensive.*
– pairng see. *– Yes it is.*

5 fairn

The word *fairn* derives from the English 'fan' (as in 'supporter', not 'cooling device') and is the normal word for *boyfriend* or *girlfriend*; its meaning is extended to include *husband* and *wife* which can occasionally lead the westerner into unworthy speculation: is that ultra-respectable, middle-aged lady with the nice husband telling you she went to the cinema with him last night . . . or with a secret boyfriend?

6 ker-ee + verb

The pattern *ker-ee + verb* is used to indicate that the action of the verb has (a) occurred at least once in the past or (b) occurred habitually in the past:

káo ker-ee bpai têe-o *He has visited Phuket.*
(to visit) poo-gèt
pǎm ker-ee ree-un *I used to study Thai.*
pah-sǎh tai.

The negative *mǎi ker-ee + verb*, means *have never . . .*:

rao mǎi ker-ee bpai. *We have never been there.*
chún mǎi ker-ee tum. *I have never done it.*

Questions that follow the pattern *ker-ee + verb + mǎi?* (*Have you ever . . . ?*) are answered either *ker-ee* (*yes*) or *mǎi ker-ee* (*no*):

ker-ee ree-un mǎi? *Have you ever studied it?*
– ker-ee/mǎi ker-ee. *– Yes/no.*

ker-ee gin ah-hǎhn tai mǎi? *Have you ever eaten Thai food?*
– ker-ee/mǎi ker-ee. *– Yes/no.*

7 gum-lung + verb + yòo

The pattern *gum-lung + verb + yòo* is used to indicate continuous actions, either in the present (*I am learning Thai*) or in the past (*I was learning Thai*); either *gum-lung* or *yòo* may be dropped:

káo gum-lung doo tee-wee yòo. *He is/was watching TV.*
káo gum-lung doo tee-wee. *He is/was watching TV.*
káo doo tee-wee yòo. *He is/was watching TV.*

pǎm gum-lung ree-un pah-sǎh *I am/was studying Thai.*
tai yòo.

chún gum-lung kít yòo. *I'm thinking.*
rao gum-lung gin káo yòo. *We are/were eating.*
kOOn tum a-rai yòo? *What are you doing?*

8 'Must'

dtông (*must*) occurs before another verb:

dtông bpai tum ngahn *I have to go to work in the*
dtorn yen. *evening.*

Questions asking whether someone must do something are answered *dtông* (*yes*) or *mǎi dtông* (*no*):

dtông ree-un kèe-un mǎi? *Do I have to learn to write?*
– dtông/mǎi dtông. *– Yes/no.*

dtông can be negated in two ways: (a) *mǎi dtông + verb* means *there is no need to . . .*:

mǎi dtông gloo-a. *There's no need to be afraid.*
káo mǎi dtông bpai. *There's no need for him to go.*

(b) *dtông mǎi + verb* means *must not . . .*:

kOOn dtông mǎi gloo-a. *You must not be afraid.*
káo dtông mǎi bpai. *He must not go.*

9 mãi kôy . . . tâo-rài

mãi kôy . . . tâo-rài (*not very . . .*) is a useful expression for 'softening' negative statements or responses; the word *tâo-rài* is optional and may be omitted:

mãi kôy yâhk (tâo-rài).	<i>It's not very difficult.</i>
mãi kôy pairng (tâo-rài).	<i>It's not very expensive.</i>
káo pòot tai mãi kôy chút (tâo-rài).	<i>He doesn't speak Thai very clearly.</i>
yòo meu-ung tai nahn mái?	<i>Have you lived in Thailand long?</i>
- mãi kôy nahn (tâo-rài).	<i>- Not very long.</i>

10 kwahm + verb

The pattern *kwahm* + verb is used to form abstract nouns. In the dialogue *kwahm jing* can be translated as *the truth is* or *actually*. Some common examples include:

<i>jing</i>	<i>to be true</i>	<i>kwahm jing</i>	<i>truth</i>
<i>dee</i>	<i>to be good</i>	<i>kwahm dee</i>	<i>goodness</i>
<i>kít</i>	<i>to think</i>	<i>kwahm kít</i>	<i>idea</i>
<i>rúk</i>	<i>to love</i>	<i>kwahm rúk</i>	<i>love</i>
<i>sÓOk</i>	<i>to be happy</i>	<i>kwahm sÓOk</i>	<i>happiness</i>

11 Comparisons

Comparisons are made using the pattern *X* + adjective + *gwàh* (+ *Y*):

<i>nêe pairng gwàh.</i>	<i>This is more expensive.</i>
<i>pah-săh yêe-bpOOn yâhk gwàh.</i>	<i>Japanese is more difficult.</i>
<i>àhn ngâi gwàh pòot.</i>	<i>Reading is easier than speaking.</i>
<i>káo pòot gèng gwàh chún.</i>	<i>She speaks better than me.</i>

Comparisons can be modified by adding *mâhk* (*a lot*) or *nít-nòy* (*a little bit*) to the end of the sentence:

<i>káo pòot gèng gwàh chún mâhk.</i>	<i>She speaks much better than me.</i>
<i>nêe pairng gwàh nít-nòy.</i>	<i>This is a little bit more expensive.</i>

Exercises

- 1 How would you respond to the following questions?
- kOOn pòot pah-săh tai bpen mái?
 - ree-un pah-săh tai nahn mái?
 - àhn pah-săh tai bpen mái?
 - kêe-un pah-săh tai bpen mái?
 - pah-săh tai yâhk mái?
- 2 How would you ask someone if they had ever:
- been to England?
 - studied English?
 - eaten fish and chips?
 - visited Phuket?
 - worked in Bangkok?
- 3 How would you say that something is:
- not very expensive?
 - not very far?
 - not very tasty?
 - not very good?
 - not very clear?
 - not very difficult?
- 4 And how would you say that something is:
- more expensive?
 - further?
 - tastier?
 - better?
 - clearer?
 - more difficult?
- 5 This is how a number of languages have been ranked in terms of relative difficulty for the English-speaking learner.

	Speaking	Reading
Difficult	Japanese Chinese Thai	Chinese Japanese Thai
Easy	French	French

Complete the following statements using either *yâhk gwàh* or *ngài gwàh*:

- (a) pah-sǎh tai pōot . . . pah-sǎh fa-rùng-sàyt.
 (b) pah-sǎh jeen pōot . . . pah-sǎh yêe-bpŌOn.
 (c) pah-sǎh fa-rùng-sàyt àhn . . . pah-sǎh jeen.
 (d) pah-sǎh yêe-bpŌOn àhn . . . pah-sǎh tai.

Reading and writing

The chart summarizing tone rules in unit 6 will help you to read any dead syllable, but it covers only those live syllables that are pronounced with a mid or rising tone.

As you will have realized, there are many live syllables that are pronounced with a falling, high or low tone – words such as *mái*, *chêu*, *lái-r-o*, *yòo*, *nòy* and so on.

In words like these, the tone is represented by a tone mark which is written above the initial consonant. If the initial consonant has an $\hat{\text{~}}$ or $\check{\text{~}}$ vowel above it, then the tone mark is written above the vowel. The two most common tone marks are *mái àyk*, which you are about to meet, and *mái toh* which will be introduced in the next unit.

1 *mái àyk* (ˊ): tone rules

This tone mark looks like the number 1. It is written above the initial consonant and in line with the right-hand perpendicular stroke. Unfortunately for the learner, due to changes in the language that have occurred over hundreds of years, this one tone mark can represent two different tones! As with dead syllables, the determining factor is the class of the initial consonant. If *mái àyk* occurs on a low-class initial consonant, the tone will be falling:

Low class	ไม่	ที่	ชื่อ
	mái	têe	chêu

If the initial consonant is either mid or high class, then the tone is low:

Mid class	ไก่อ	ต่อ	จ่าย
	gài	dtòr	jài

High class	สี	หนึ่ง*	น้อย*
	sèe	nèung	nòy

* Remember that silent หนี ‘converts’ the next consonant to high class.

2 Silent หนี at the beginning of a word

In unit 5 you met words that began with a silent หนี. There are also a very small number of words – only four in fact – that begin with a silent หนี. These are all pronounced with a *low tone*. All four words are very common and it is well worth copying them down and memorizing them at this stage. Two of them – *yòo* and *yâhk* – have already occurred in the dialogues:

อยู่	อย่า	อย่าง	อยาก
yòo	yàh	yàhng	yàhk
<i>to be situated at</i>	<i>don't</i>	<i>like, kind</i>	<i>to like to</i>

Reading practice

▶ 1 Words

All these words are written with *mái àyk*. This means they will be pronounced with either a falling tone or a low tone:

ไม่	นี้	พ่อ	แม่	หนึ่ง	คู่
อยู่	ไก่อ	แต่	สั่ง	น้อย	ต่อ
ชื่อ	ใช่	พี่	ที่	อ่าน	ว่า

▶ 2 Phrases

Next, some short phrases using words with *mái àyk*:

ใช่ไหม	ไม่ใช่	นี้เท่าไร	ยี่สิบบาท
แพงไปหน่อย	จอดที่นี่	ไม่แพงหรอก	อยู่ที่ไหน
ไม่เป็นไร	อยู่ที่ไหน	อ่านไม่ยาก	คิดว่าไม่มา

▶ 3 Dialogue

And finally, here is Peter negotiating with a tuk-tuk driver:

- Peter** ไปชอยสามสิบสามเท่าไร
Tuk-tuk ชอยสามสิบสามหรือ คิดแปดสิบบาท
Peter แปดสิบบาทหรือ แพงไปหน่อย
Tuk-tuk ไม่แพงหรอก รถติดมาก

- 1 Where does Peter want to go?
- 2 How much does the tuk-tuk driver ask for?
- 3 What is Peter's reaction?
- 4 What is the tuk-tuk driver's justification?

08

mee pèe nórng mái?
 do you have any brothers
 and sisters?
 มีพี่น้องไหม

In this unit you will learn

- how to greet people
- kin terms: brothers and sisters, sons and daughters
- why? questions
- how many? questions
- . . . yet? questions
- tone marks: mái toh, mái dtree and mái jüt-dta-wah

▶ Dialogues

Sue and her husband Peter are visiting Sue's friend Chanida at her home.

- Chanida** สวัสดีค่ะ คุณซู sa-wùt dee ká kOOn Sue.
 เชิญข้างในซิคะ chern kûng nai sí ká.
- Sue** ขอบคุณค่ะ นี่ปีเตอร์ kòrp-kOOn ká. nêe Peter
 แฟนฉันกับลูก fairn chún gup lóok.
- Chanida** สวัสดีค่ะ คุณ Peter sa-wùt dee ká. kOOn Peter
 สบายดีหรือคะ sa-bai dee lěr ká?
- Peter** สบายดีครับ sa-bai dee krúp.
 แล้วคุณชนิดาละครับ láir-o kOOn cha-ní-dah lá krúp?
- Chanida** สบายดีเหมือนกันค่ะ sa-bai dee mêu-un gun ká.
 ทำไมคุณ Peter tum-mai kOOn Peter
 พุดไทยเก่ง poot tai gèng?
 อยู่เมืองไทยนานไหม yòo meu-ung tai nahn máí?
- Peter** ไม่ค่อยนานเท่าไรครับ mái kôy nahn táo-rài krúp.
- Chanida** เก่งนะ พุดไทยชัด gèng ná. poot tai chút.
 แล้วลูกล่ะ láir-o lóok lá.
 พุดภาษาไทยเป็นไหม poot pah-sáh tai bpen máí?
- Sue** เป็นนิดหน่อยค่ะ bpen nít-nòy ká.

chern ... sí	please ...	เชิญ ... ซิ
kûng nai	inside	ข้างใน
fairn	boy/girlfriend; spouse	แฟน
lóok	child (one's own)	ลูก
sa-bai	to be well, comfortable	สบาย
sa-bai dee lěr?	How are you?	สบายดีหรือ
láir-o ... lá?	And how about ... ?	แล้ว ... ละ
mêu-un gun	likewise	เหมือนกัน

▶ Chanida and Sue are looking through some old family snapshots of Sue's.

- Chanida** คุณซูมีพี่น้อง kOOn Sue mee pée-nórng
 ใหม่คะ mái ká?
- Sue** มีค่ะ มีสี่คน mee ká. mee sèe kon.
 มีพี่ชายคนหนึ่ง mee pée-chai kon nèung,
 พี่สาวคนหนึ่ง pée-săo kon nèung,
 น้องชายคนหนึ่ง nórng-chai kon nèung
 แล้วก็น้องสาว láir-o gôr nórng-săo
 คนหนึ่ง kon nèung.
- Chanida** พี่ชายใช้ไหมคะ nêe pée-chai, chái mái ká?
- Sue** ใช่ค่ะ chái ká.
- Chanida** รูปหล่อนะ rôop lòr ná
 อายุเท่าไรคะ ah-yóo táo-rài ká?
- Sue** อายุสามสิบสองคะ ah-yóo sâhm-sip-sörng ká.
- Chanida** แต่งงานแล้วหรือยัง dtàirng ngahn láir-o réu yung?
- Sue** แต่งงานแล้ว dtàirng ngahn láir-o.
- Chanida** มีลูกแล้วหรือยังคะ mee lóok láir-o réu yung ká?
- Sue** มีแล้ว mee láir-o.
- Chanida** มีลูกกี่คน mee lóok gèe kon?
- Sue** สองคนค่ะ sörng kon ká.
 ลูกชายอายุสามขวบ lóok chai ah-yóo sâhm kòo-up
 ลูกสาวอายุสองขวบ lóok săo ah-yóo sörng kòo-up
 แล้วคุณชนิดาละ láir-o kOOn cha-ní-dah lá.
 มีพี่น้องไหม mee pée-nórng máí?

pêe-nórng	brothers and sisters	พี่น้อง
pêe-chai	older brother	พี่ชาย
pêe-sǎo	older sister	พี่สาว
nórng-chai	younger brother	น้องชาย
nórng-sǎo	younger sister	น้องสาว
rôop	shape, appearance	รูปร่าง
lòr	handsome	หล่อ
ah-yóo	age	อายุ
dtàirng ngahn	to be married	แต่งงาน
... láir-o réu yung?	... yet (or not)?	แล้วหรือยัง
gèe	how many?	กี่
lòok chai	son	ลูกชาย
kòo-up	year(s) old	ขวบ
lòok sǎo	daughter	ลูกสาว

- 1 Has Peter been in Thailand long?
- 2 What compliments does Chanida pay Peter?
- 3 Do Peter and Sue's children speak Thai?
- 4 How many brothers and sisters does Sue have?
- 5 How old is her older brother?
- 6 How old are his children?

i If you are invited to a Thai home, you should normally remove your shoes before entering the house. The traditional Thai greeting is the *wài*, in which the head is bowed slightly and the hands held in prayer-like position in front of the face at approximately chin height. How low the head is bowed and the height at which the hands are held reflect the degree of respect conveyed by the person *wai*-ing. A child *wai*-ing an adult, for example, may hold their hands so that the tips of the fingers are close to the forehead, while an adult responding may keep their own fingertips well below their chin.

Thais also show respect for older people by trying to keep their head at a lower level when passing or talking to them. For very tall people this can be tricky, if not impossible, and this requirement should not be taken too literally; an obvious attempt to bend forward a little is

quite sufficient. It should be mentioned that for Thais, the head is a taboo area: never attempt to ruffle a Thai's hair in jest or offer a friendly pat on the head.

If it is second nature for you to sit with one or both legs stretched out in front of you, you risk unwittingly causing offence, for to point your feet directly towards someone is considered extremely impolite. Practise keeping your feet firmly on the ground or demurely tucked to one side but as inconspicuous as possible!

▶ Key phrases and expressions

How to:

- 1 ask how someone is
(formal) sa-bai dee lǎr krúp (ká)? สบายดีหรือครับ (คะ)
(informal) bpen yung-ngai bâhng? เป็นอย่างไรบ้าง
- 2 ask how many brothers and sisters a person has
mee pèe-nórng gèe kon? มีพี่น้องกี่คน
- 3 ask about a person's age
ah-yóo tâo-rài? อายุเท่าไร
- 4 ask whether a person is married or not
dtàirng ngahn láir-o réu yung? แต่งงานแล้วหรือยัง
- 5 ask whether a person has any children or not
mee lòok láir-o réu yung? มีลูกแล้วหรือยัง

Language notes

1 Polite invitations

The pattern *chern* (to invite) + verb + *sí* is used when inviting someone to do something such as come in, sit down, go first, start eating and so on.

The mood particle *sí* following a verb, often conveys the sense of a mild command:

chern kûng nai sí krúp/ká.	Please come in.
chern nûng sí krúp/ká.	Please sit down.
chern sí krúp/ká.	Please go ahead.

Note the female polite particle in *chern* . . . invitations is *ká*, not *kâ*.

2 'How are you?'

The question *sa-bai dee lěr?* (*are you well?*) is normally answered *sa-bai dee*. The same answer is appropriate for the more informal enquiry *bpen yung-ngai bânng?* (*how are things?*)

3 láir-o ... lâ? questions

The expression *láir-o ... lâ?* means '(And) how/what about ...?'; the speaker assumes that the listener understands the context of the question, which remains unspecified:

<i>láir-o kOOn lâ?</i>	<i>And how about you?</i>
<i>láir-o lôok lâ?</i>	<i>And how about the children?</i>
<i>láir-o dtorn yen lâ?</i>	<i>And what about the evening?</i>

4 'Why?' questions

The question word *tum-mai?* (*why?*) can occur either at the beginning or the end of the question:

<i>tum-mai kOOn pôot tai gèng?</i>	<i>Why do you speak Thai so well?</i>
<i>bpai tum-mai?</i>	<i>Why are you going?</i>

You can answer 'why?' questions using *prór wâh* (*because*):

<i>prór wâh mâir bpen kon tai.</i>	<i>Because my mother is Thai.</i>
<i>prór wâh yâhk bpai.</i>	<i>Because I'd like to go.</i>

5 'Brothers and sisters'

pêe-nórng (*brothers and sisters*) literally means *older siblings-younger siblings* and makes no reference to gender at all. You may hear someone referring to a member of their family as *pêe* and you will not know whether it is an older brother or older sister. When it is necessary to be specific, the word *chai* (male) or *são* (female) is added after *pêe* or *nórng*. These same gender words are also used with *lôok* (*child*) to distinguish between sons and daughters:

<i>pêe-chai</i>	<i>older brother</i>
<i>pêe-são</i>	<i>older sister</i>
<i>nórng-chai</i>	<i>younger brother</i>
<i>nórng-são</i>	<i>younger sister</i>

Both *pêe* and *nórng* are also used as *I* and *you* pronouns to create a sense of both hierarchy and intimacy. *pêe* has an especially wide range of usage, which includes younger work colleagues addressing older colleagues, shop assistants addressing older customers, wives addressing husbands and complete strangers striking up a conversation with someone older. *nórng* is often used in restaurants, as an alternative to *nôo* (unit 3) to summon a waiter or waitress; but it can also convey closeness or intimacy between the two speakers.

6 Age

Age is stated using the verb *ah-yÓO* (*age*) + number + *kòo-up/* (*bpee*) (*years*). *kòo-up* is used when talking about children up to the age of 13 or 14; for people older than that, *bpee* may be used, although it is often omitted. *láir-o* (*already*) may also occur at the end of the expression. The question word *tào-rài?* (*how much?*) is used when asking someone's age:

<i>ah-yÓO tào-rài?</i>	<i>How old is he?</i>
<i>ah-yÓO hòk kòo-up (láir-o)</i>	<i>six years old</i>
<i>ah-yÓO yêe-síp hâh bpee (láir-o)</i>	<i>25 years old</i>

7 ... láir-o réu yung? questions

Questions that end in *...láir-o réu yung?* ask whether something has happened yet; the word *láir-o* is often omitted and the question abbreviated to *...réu yung?*:

<i>dtàirng ngahn (láir-o) réu yung?</i>	<i>Is he married (yet)?</i>
<i>mee lôok (láir-o) réu yung?</i>	<i>Do they have any children (yet)?</i>
<i>gin kâo (láir-o) réu yung?</i>	<i>Have you eaten yet?</i>

A *yes* answer to a *...láir-o réu yung?* question is formed by verb + *láir-o*; a *no* answer is *yung krúp/kâ*:

<i>dtàirng ngahn (láir-o) réu yung?</i>	<i>Is he married?</i>
<i>- dtàirng ngahn láir-o /yung krúp/kâ.</i>	<i>Yes/no.</i>
<i>mee lôok (láir-o) réu yung?</i>	<i>Do they have any children?</i>
<i>- mee láir-o/yung krúp/kâ.</i>	<i>Yes/no.</i>
<i>gin kâo (láir-o) réu yung?</i>	<i>Have you eaten yet?</i>
<i>- gin láir-o/yung krúp/kâ.</i>	<i>Yes/no.</i>

8 'How many?' questions

How many? questions are formed by the pattern verb + (noun) + gèe (*how many?*) + classifier; the answer will normally take the form (noun) + number + classifier:

mee lóok gèe kon? - mee (lók) sǒrng kon.	<i>How many children do you have?</i> - <i>Two.</i>
ao bpép-sêe gèe kòo-ut? - hâh kòo-ut.	<i>How many bottles of Pepsi do you want?</i> - <i>Five.</i>
séu (<i>buy</i>) sa-dtairm gèe doo-ung? - síp doo-ung.	<i>How many stamps did you buy?</i> - <i>Ten.</i>
bpai gèe wun? - sǎhm wun.	<i>How many days are you going for?</i> - <i>Three.</i>

9 Children

The word *lók* (*child, children*) refers only to children in the sense of offspring. Thais would use *lók* in sentences like *How many children do you have?*, *Her children are lovely!*, *Whose child is that?* and so on. When talking about children as an age category in statements such as *Thai children are very polite*, *Children under 12 not admitted* and so on, the word *dèk* is used.

The gender of one's children are specified in the same way as brothers and sisters, namely *chai* for males and *sǎo* for females:

lúuk chai	<i>son</i>
lúuk sǎo	<i>daughter</i>

Exercises

1 How would you ask someone if they have:

- parked the car yet?
- eaten yet?
- spoken to Khun Somchai yet?
- told Khun Malee yet?
- been out yet?

2 How would you ask someone:

- how many brothers and sisters they have?
- how many older sisters they have?
- how many younger brothers they have?
- how many children they have?
- how many sons they have?
- how many daughters they have?

3 How would you respond if a Thai said to you:

- sa-bai dee lǎe krúp?
- kOOn pòot pah-sǎh tai bpen máí?
- yòo meu-ung tai nahn máí?
- kOOn pòot tai gèng.
- chern kúng nai sí krúp.
- mee pèe-nórng máí?
- kǒr-tòht, kOOn dtàirng ngahn láir-o réu yung?

4 How would you ask someone:

- how many cups of coffee they drank?
- how many plates of shrimp fried rice they ate?
- how many bottles of beer they drank?
- how many stamps they want?
- how many mangoes they ate?

5 Sue has gone to register at a local clinic. A receptionist is taking down details from the answers Sue gives. What questions did the secretary ask?

Receptionist	_____.
Sue	chêu Susan Ford kâ.
Receptionist	_____.
Sue	ah-yÓO sǎhm-síp-hâh bpee láir-o.
Receptionist	yòo _____.
Sue	mâi nahn kâ. sǒrng sǎhm deu-un tào-nún.
Receptionist	kǒr-tòht _____.
Sue	kâ, dtàirng ngahn láir-o.
Receptionist	_____.
Sue	mee láir-o. mee lóok chai sǒrng kon láir-o gôr lóok sǎo kon nèung.
Receptionist	_____.
Sue	ah-yÓO síp kòo-up, bpàirt kòo-up láir-o gôr hâh kòo-up.

Reading and writing

In the last unit you met the tone mark *mái àyk*. The other main tone mark is *mái toh* which is introduced in this unit together with the much less common *mái dtree* and *mái jùt-dta-wah*. Scan through some of the earlier dialogues to see how frequently *mái àyk* and *mái toh* tone marks occur. Once you have mastered these, you are well on the way to being able to read the dialogues in Thai script.

1 *mái toh* (ˉ): tone rules

This tone mark looks like the number 2 with an elongated tail and is written above the initial consonant. Like *mái àyk*, this single tone mark also represents two different tones.

When *mái toh* occurs on a low class initial consonant, the tone is high:

Low class	รู้	แล้ว	ห้อง
	róo	láir-o	nórng

If the initial consonant is either mid or high class, then the tone is falling:

Mid class	ได้	แก้ว	ต้อง
	dái	gâir-o	dtórng
High class	ข้าง	ให้	ถ้า
	kâhng	hâi	tâh

2 *mái dtree* (ˊ) and *mái jùt-dta-wah* (ˋ): tone rules

In addition to *mái àyk* and *mái toh* there are two other tone marks to learn. But these are much less frequently encountered than the tone marks you have already learned. *mái dtree* looks like the number 7: it always produces a *high* tone. The symbol for *mái jùt-dta-wah* is a cross; words with this mark are always pronounced with a rising tone:

เป็ปซี่	ต๋อย
bpép-sêe	dtǒy

3 Summary of tone mark rules

Tone marks are used, where necessary, to indicate tones in live syllables. (There are only a few exceptions where a tone mark is used in a dead syllable.)

The following chart summarizes these rules:

Initial consonant class	<i>mái àyk</i> (ˉ)	<i>mái toh</i> (ˉ)	<i>mái dtree</i> (ˊ)	<i>mái jùt-dta-wah</i> (ˋ)
Low class	Falling	High	High	Rising
Mid class	Low	Falling	High	Rising
High class	Low	Falling	High	Rising

Again, as a learning aid, you might find it helpful to make your own copy of this chart and keep it handy for reference rather than trying to memorize everything immediately.

Reading practice

1 Words

All these words are written with *mái toh* and are therefore pronounced with either a falling tone or a high tone:

ต้อง	ทิ้ง	บ้าน	ให้	รู้
ล้ม	นี้	ถ้า	แก้ว	น้ำ
แล้ว	กุ่ม	ร้อน	ห้อง	ชื่อ
ข้าว	โน้น	แก้ว	หน้า	ได้

2 Phrases

And now some phrases from this and earlier units, using words with *mái toh*:

ได้ไหม	ไม่ได้	สามสิบห้า
รู้จักไหม	ก็แล้วกัน	ข้าวผัดกุ่ม
แก้วหนึ่ง	แถวนี้	สองร้อยบาท

▶ 3 Dialogue

And finally, here is Somchai ordering lunch in a noodle shop for himself and a couple of friends:

- Somchai** ขอข้าวผัดกึ่งสองจาน
แล้วก็ข้าวหน้าเปิดจานหนึ่ง
- Waiter** ข้าวหน้าเปิดไม่มี
มีข้าวหน้าไก่แล้วก็ข้าวหมูแดง
- Somchai** ขอข้าวหมูแดงก็แล้วกัน
แล้วก็น้ำส้มสามแก้ว
- Waiter** น้ำส้มไม่มี
มีเป๊ปซี่เท่านั้น

ข้าวหน้าเปิด	<i>duck rice</i>
ข้าวหน้าไก่	<i>chicken rice</i>
ข้าวหมูแดง	<i>red pork rice</i>
น้ำส้ม	<i>orange juice</i>
เท่านั้น	<i>only</i>

- 1 What did Somchai order?
- 2 Which food dish did the restaurant not have?
- 3 What did Somchai choose instead?
- 4 What is the only drink that the restaurant has?
- 5 What drinks did Somchai originally order?

08

tahn ah-hǎhn
pét bpen mǎi?
can you eat hot food?
ทานอาหารเผ็ดเป็นไหม

In this lesson you will learn

- more about food and restaurant transactions
- anything, anywhere, anyone
- the verb *hǎi*
- if clauses
- consonants: พ ฐ ภ ญ ฝ
- vowels: เ-า ไ-ย เ-อ ั-ว เ-ิ -ะ

▶ Dialogues

Waiter	สั่งหรือยังครับ	sùng réu yung krúp?
Chanida	ยังค่ะ	yung kâ.
	ขอเมนูหน่อย	kõr doo may-noo nòy.
	คุณปีเตอร์ชอบทานอะไร	kOOn Peter chõp tahn a-rai?
Peter	อะไรก็ได้ครับ	a-rai gõr dâi krúp.
	ให้คุณชนิดา	hâi kOOn cha-ní-dah
	สั่งดีกว่า	sùng dee gwàh.
Chanida	คุณ Sue	kOOn Sue
	ทานเผ็ดเป็นไหม	tahn pèt bpen máí?
Sue	เป็นค่ะ	bpen kâ,
	ถ้าไม่เผ็ดเกินไป	tâh mâi pèt gern bpai.
Chanida	แกงไก่เผ็ดมากไหมคะ	gairng gàì pèt mâhk mái ká?
Waiter	ไม่ค่อยเผ็ดเท่าไรครับ	mâi kôy pèt tâo-rài krúp.
Chanida	ถ้าอย่างนั้น	tâh yàhng nún
	ก็ขอแกงไก่	gõr kõr gairng gàì
	เนื้อผัดน้ำมันหอย	néu-a pùt núm mun hõy
	แล้วก็ต้มยำกุ้ง	láir-o gõr dtôm yum gOOn.
	ต้มยำไม่เอาเผ็ด	dtôm yum mâi ao pèt
	มากนะ เอาข้าวด้วยนะ	mâhk ná. ao kâo dõo-ay ná.
Waiter	ครับ	krúp.
	แล้วรับน้ำอะไรครับ	láir-o rúp náhm a-rai krúp?
Chanida	ขอน้ำส้มคั้น	kõr núm sôm kún
	สองแก้วค่ะ	sõrng gâi-o kâ.
	แล้วคุณ Peter	láir-o kOOn Peter
	รับเบียร์ ไช้ไหม	rúp bee-a châi máí?

sùng	to order	สั่ง
tahn	to eat	ทาน
a-rai gõr dâi	anything	อะไรก็ได้
hâi	to get someone to do something	ให้
pèt	spicy	เผ็ด
tâh	if	ถ้า
... gern bpai	tooเกินไป
gairng	curry	แกง
gairng gàì	chicken curry	แกงไก่
tâh yàhng nún	in that case	ถ้าอย่างนั้น
néu-a	beef	เนื้อ
pùt	to stir fry	ผัด
núm mun hõy	oyster sauce	น้ำมันหอย
néu-a pùt	beef fried in	เนื้อผัดน้ำมันหอย
núm mun hõy	oyster sauce	
dtôm yum gOOn	shrimp 'tom yam'	ต้มยำกุ้ง
rúp	to receive, take	รับ
núm sôm	orange juice	น้ำส้ม
núm sôm kún	fresh orange juice	น้ำส้มคั้น

▶ After the main course the waiter returns.

Waiter	รับของหวานไหมครับ	rúp kõrng wáhn mái krúp?
Chanida	มีอะไรบ้างคะ	mee a-rai bâhng ká?
Waiter	มีผลไม้ ขนม	mee põn-la-mái ka-nõm
	แล้วก็ไอศกรีม	láir-o gõr ai dtim.
Chanida	ขนมที่นี้อร่อยนะ	ka-nõm tõe-nõe a-ròy ná.
	คุณ Sue ทานขนมไหม	kOOn Sue tahn ka-nõm máí?
Sue	ไม่ค่ะ อิ่มแล้ว	mâi kâ. im láir-o.

Chanida	แล้วคุณ Peter ล่ะ	láir-o kOOn Peter lá?
Peter	ทานขนม ไทยไม่เป็นครับ คิดว่าไม่อร่อย หวานเกินไป	tahn ka-nöm tai mâi bpen krúp. kit wâh mâi a-ròy. wähn gern bpai.

körng wähn	sweet, dessert	ของหวาน
... bähng	(see Language notes)	... บ้าง
pön-la-mái	fruit	ผลไม้
ka-nöm	cake, dessert	ขนม
ai dtim	ice cream	ไอศกรีม
im	to be full	อิ่ม

▶ At the end of the meal, Khun Somchai offers Peter a cigarette.

Somchai	สูบบุหรี่ใหม่ครับ	sòop bOO-rèe mái krúp?
Peter	ไม่สูบบุหรี่ เลิกแล้ว	mâi sòop krúp. lèrk láir-o.
Somchai	เก่งนะ ไม่สูบบุหรี่ก็เครียด เลิกไม่ได้ น้อง ๆ ขอที่เขี่ยบุหรี่หน่อย เช็คบิลด้วย	gèng ná. mâi sòop pöm gôr krée-ut. lèrk mâi dâi. nórng, nórng! kǒr tée-kèe-a bOO-rèe nòy. chék bin dôo-ay.
Waiter	ครับผม	krúp pöm.

bOO-rèe	cigarette	บุหรี่
sòop bOO-rèe	to smoke	สูบบุหรี่
lèrk	to cease, give up	เลิก
krée-ut	to be stressed, tense	เครียด
nórng, nórng	waiter!	น้อง ๆ
tée-kèe-a bOO-rèe	ashtray	ที่เขี่ยบุหรี่
chék bin	can I have the bill?	เช็คบิล
krúp pöm	(male polite particle)	ครับผม

- 1 Can Sue eat hot food?
- 2 What dishes does Khun Chanida order?
- 3 What do they have to drink with their meal?
- 4 Why doesn't Sue want any dessert?
- 5 Why doesn't Peter like Thai desserts?
- 6 What does Somchai ask the waiter for?

i If you are eating alone in a restaurant, you are most likely to order a rice or noodle dish (see unit 4) which are served quickly. But if you go out for an evening meal with a number of friends, you are more likely to order rice and a variety of side dishes. These may be brought to the table once they are cooked and the meal can begin before all the dishes have arrived. If you are invited to select one of the dishes, you should be aware that it is not for your exclusive consumption but is supposed to blend in with all the other dishes. If you are not very confident about what to choose, you can always relinquish the responsibility by saying, **hâi kOOn X sùng dee gwáh** (*it's better to let Khun X order*). But even if you opt out, watch what Thais order, so that on future occasions you will be able to make appropriate combinations. Thais use a spoon and fork (although chopsticks are used in noodle shops) to eat. After rice has been served onto the plate, a spoonful or two is normally taken from one of the side dishes and mixed with the rice before eating. A meal is thus a constant 'dipping-in' process. In some restaurants a serving spoon will be provided with each side dish, but in others, you simply use the spoon and fork that you eat with. Expect to be asked questions about whether you can eat Thai food (**tahn ah-hähn tai bpen mái?**), whether you can eat spicy food (**tahn ah-hähn pèt bpen mái?**, often abbreviated to **tahn pèt bpen mái?**), whether Thai food is tasty (**ah-hähn tai a-ròy mái?**), whether Thai food is spicy (**ah-hähn tai pèt mái?**) and so on. At the end of a meal, the host, or senior person present will normally pick up the bill.

Although Thai cigarette packets carry health warnings, many Thais, especially men, smoke. Smoking is still seen as manly in men and sophisticated in some women. When offering a cigarette, a Thai may ask **sòop bOO-rèe mái?** or, more surprisingly to the English speaker, **sòop bOO-rèe bpen mái?** (literally, 'Can you smoke?'). The latter question does not require a pedantic explanation along the lines of 'Yes-I-can-but-actually-I-don't-anymore-because-it's-bad-for-the-health'; a simple **mâi sòop krúp (kâ)** or, if accepting, **kòrp-kOOn krúp (kâ)** is quite sufficient. If you are a smoker, turn to page 168 and learn to recognise the Thai words for 'No smoking' in exercise 3(c).

▶ Key phrases and expressions

How to:

- ask your friend to order for you
hâi kOOn X sùng dee gwàh ให้คุณ X สั่งดีกว่า
- ask if a dish is very spicy
... pèt mâhk mái? ... เผ็ดมากไหม
- tell the waiter you don't want it too hot
mâi ao pèt mâhk ná ไม่เอาเผ็ดมากนะ
- say you are full
im láir-o อิ่มแล้ว
- say you can't eat something
tahn (gin) ... mâi bpen ทาน (กิน) ... ไม่เป็น
- say something is too sweet/spicy
wáhn/pèt gern bpai หวาน/เผ็ดเกินไป
- say you don't smoke
mâi sòop krúp (kâ) ไม่สูบบุหรี่(ค่ะ)

Language notes

1 'Like'

It is important not to confuse **chôrp** (*to like*) with **yàhk (ja)** (*to want to, would like to*) which you met in unit 5. **chôrp** can be followed by either a verb or a noun, but **yàhk ja** is always followed by a verb:

chôrp yòo têe-nêe.	<i>I like living here.</i>
yàhk ja yòo têe-nêe.	<i>I would like to live here.</i>
chôrp (gin) ah-háhn tai.	<i>I like (eating) Thai food.</i>
yàhk ja gin ah-háhn tai.	<i>I would like to eat Thai food.</i>

2 ... gôr dâi

The question words **arai?** (*what?*), **tâo-rài?** (*how much?*), **têe-nâi?** (*where?*), **krai?** (*who?*) and **mêu-rài?** (*when?*) also act as indefinite pronouns, *anything, however much, anywhere, anyone* and *whenever*, respectively; they are followed by ... **gôr dâi** to show amenability or indifference, similar to English *anything/anyone/whenever you like*:

pôm tahn a-rai gôr dâi.	<i>I can eat anything you like.</i>
kOOn bòrk krai gôr dâi.	<i>You can tell anyone you like.</i>
jòrt têe-nâi gôr dâi.	<i>Park anywhere you like.</i>
rao bpai mêu-rài gôr dâi.	<i>We can go any time you like.</i>

3 hâi

hâi is an important verb in Thai with a number of distinct usages. One use is as a causative verb, which ranges in meaning from the mildly coercive *to get someone to do something*, to the more benevolent *to let someone do something*; the listener has to judge from the context which sense is implied:

(pôm) hâi kOOn cha-ní-dah sùng.	<i>I'll let Khun Chanida order.</i>
chún hâi káo toh mah mài.	<i>I got him to ring back.</i>
káo hâi pôm jòrt rót dtrong née.	<i>He let me park right here.</i>
kOOn ja hâi káo tum arai?.	<i>What will you get him to do?</i>

4 Polite vocabulary

One way of indicating politeness in Thai is to use polite particles, such as **krúp** and **kâ/ká** (unit 1). Another way is to select the more formal of two words with the same meaning, such as **sâhp** instead of **róo**. This unit introduces two more 'formal' words, **tahn** (*to eat*) and **rúp** (*to receive, want*) used by restaurant staff when taking orders:

	Formal	Informal
to know	sâhp	róo
to eat	tahn	gin
to want	rúp	ao

You may also meet **tahn** in the polite greeting **tahn kâo (láir-o) réu yung?** (*Have you eaten yet?*).

5 'If'

Sentences including an 'if' clause, typically follow the pattern **tâh** (*if*) ... **gôr** (*then*) + verb:

- tâh yàhng nún gôr kôr gairng gàì.** *If that's the case, I'd like chicken curry.*
tâh mâi pèt chún gôr gin dâi. *If it's not hot, I can eat it.*
tâh mâi mah gôr mâi bpen rai. *If you don't come, it doesn't matter.*
tâh rôt dtít rao gôr mâi bpai. *If the traffic is bad, we're not going.*

Confusingly, for the learner, the word **tâh** is commonly omitted:

- (tâh) mâi sòop pòm gôr krêe-ut.** *If I don't smoke, I get stressed.*
(tâh) mâi mah gôr mâi bpen rai. *If you don't come, it doesn't matter.*

gôr may also be omitted:

- tâh mâi pèt (gôr) gin dâi.** *If it's not hot, I can eat it.*

And in abrupt speech both **tâh** and **gôr** can disappear:

- mâi pèt gin dâi.** *If it's not hot, I can eat it.*
rôt dtít mâi bpai. *If the traffic is bad, we're not going.*

6 Wh- question + **bâhng**

The wh- question words (i.e. *what?*, *who?*, *where?* etc.) occur with **bâhng** (*some, somewhat*) in the pattern verb + wh-question + **bâhng** to indicate that a list of things is anticipated in the answer:

- mee kôrng wăhn a-rai bâhng?** *What desserts do you have?*
káo róa-júk krai bâhng? *Who does he know?*
bpai tée-o (visit) tée-năi bâhng? *Where did you visit?*

Answers to such questions usually take the form X + Y + **lái-o gôr** (*and*) + Z:

- mee pôn-la-mái ka-nôm
lái-o gôr ai dtim.** *There's fruit, cake and ice cream.*

7 Too ...

Too ... is expressed by the pattern adjective + (**gern**) **bpai**; the word **gern** is optional and frequently omitted in spoken Thai:

- wăhn (gern) bpai** *too sweet*
pèt (gern) bpai *too hot, spicy*
nahn (gern) bpai *too long (in time)*

The words **mâhk** (*much*), **nòy** (*a little*) or **nít nòy** (*a little bit*) can be added to convey the idea of *much too ...*, *a little too ...* and so on, in which case **gern** is normally omitted. Note that **mâhk** normally occurs before **bpai**, while **nòy** and **nít nòy** occur after:

- glai mâhk bpai** *much too far*
pèt bpai nít-nòy *a little bit too spicy*
pairng bpai nòy *a little too expensive (see unit 2)*

8 **krúp pòm**

krúp pòm is an alternative to **krúp** as a polite *yes* response for male speakers; it has only become popular in the last decade or so.

Exercises

- ▶ 1 How would you answer if a Thai asked you:
- tahn ah-hähn tai bpen mái?
 - ah-hähn tai pèt mái?
 - tahn pèt bpen mái?
 - ah-hähn tai a-ròy mái?
 - sòop bOO-rèe mái?
- ▶ 2 Answer the following questions using ... **gôr dâi** to show that you have no special preference:
- kOOn yàhk ja bpai mêu-rài?
 - kOOn yàhk ja gin năhm a-rai?
 - kOOn yàhk ja pôot gúp krai bâhng?
 - kOOn yàhk ja bpai tée-o tée-năi bâhng?
- 3 Translate the following sentences, using the pattern adjective + (**gern**) **bpai** to justify the initial negative comment:
- We can't walk. It's too far.
 - Thai desserts aren't tasty. They are too sweet.
 - I don't want it. It's too expensive.
 - He doesn't like Thai food. It's too spicy.
 - I can't speak Thai. It's too difficult.

4 Use the pattern (tâh) . . . gôr . . . to join the two sentences:

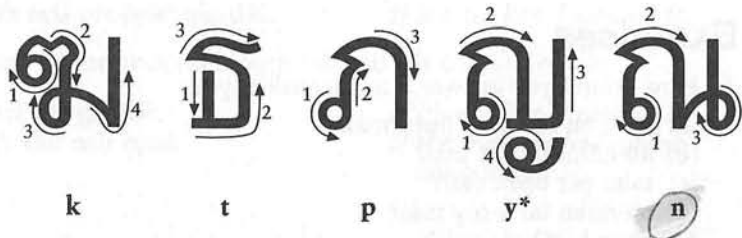
- (a) glai bpai mâi dtông dern
 (b) mâi a-ròy mâi dtông gin
 (c) mâi yàhk bpai mâi dtông
 (d) mâi pèt mâhk kít wâh gin dâi

5 Use the pattern hâi kOOn sôm-chai + verb + dee gwàh to suggest that it would be better if Somchai did the following:

- (a) parked the car.
 (b) ordered the food.
 (c) spoke to Malee.
 (d) made the telephone call.

Reading and writing

► 1 Consonants



* pronounced 'n' at the end of a word.

This third group of low-class consonants have the same sounds as other low-class consonants that you have already learned in units 1 and 4. The new consonants do not occur as frequently as those you met earlier, but they cannot be ignored as they appear in a number of common words. These include:

ฆ่า	ภาษา	หญิง	ใหญ่	ญี่ปุ่น	คุณ
kâh	pah-sâh	yǐng	yài	yêe-bpOOn	kOOn
to kill	language	lady	big	Japan	you, Khun

► 2 Vowels



Several new vowels are now being added, most of which are made up of combinations of symbols you have already met. Many learners worry that when reading words where a vowel surrounds a consonant, such as ใ-, they will try to read it as two separate vowels (ใ- and -ใ) instead of recognizing it as a single vowel. In fact, most find the problem evaporates as soon as they start to practise reading. Even so, it is worth remembering that whenever you encounter the symbol ใ- you need to scan the next couple of letters briefly to see whether it is a vowel in its own right or just a part of a 'wrap-around' vowel.

* When ใ- is followed by another consonant symbol it omits the top part (ใ-) of the vowel symbol.

หัว	ตัว	วัว
hǒo-a	dtoo-a	woo-a

but

ด้วย	สวน	ขวด
dôo-ay	sǒo-un	kòo-ut

** When ใ- is *not* followed by a consonant it drops the top part of the vowel symbol (ใ-) *but* adds the zero consonant symbol (อ) at the end of the word:

เดิน	เปิด	เกิด
dern	bpèrt	gèrt

but

เรือ	เจอ
ter	jer

Reading practice

▶ 1 Words

ภาค	ภาษา	ใหญ่	หญิง	คุณ	ฆ่า
เรา	เขา	เอา	เข้า	เท่าไร	เท่านั้น
เรียน	เขียน	เลี้ยว	เมื่อ	เหมือน	เพื่อน
ตัว	หัว	วัว	สวย	ช่วย	ด้วย
เกิน	เกิด	เชิญ	เดิน	เจอ	เธอ
จะ	คะ	ค่ะ	นะ	อะไร	บะหมี่

▶ 2 Phrases

These phrases from earlier units include some of the new letters from this unit.

คุณซื้ออะไรคะ	สีแดงสวยมากนะคะ
โลละเท่าไร	เก้าสิบบเอ็ดบาทคะ
แล้วเลี้ยวซ้าย	เอาน้ำอะไรคะ
เอาบะหมี่น้ำขามหนึ่ง	เอาเป๊ปซี่ขวดใหญ่
เดินไปสองนาที่เท่านั้น	อยากจะลงทะเลเบียนด้วย
เป็นเพื่อนคุณมาลี	จะไปเมื่อไรคะ
เรียกว่าน้อยหน้า	อยู่เมืองไทยนานไหม
แล้วคุณชนิดาล่ะครับ	พูดภาษาไทยเป็นไหม
ลูกชายอายุสามขวบ	

3 Menus

Thai food has become extremely popular in the West following the tourist boom of the 1980s. Menus in Thai restaurants often list dishes both in Thai script and romanized Thai, although systems of romanizing Thai words will vary considerably from one restaurant to another. Cover up the romanized Thai and see how well you can read basic menu items.

Curries and soups

แกง	gairng	'wet' curry (i.e. with a lot of liquid)
แพนง	pa-nairng	'dry' curry
แกงไก่	gairng gàì	chicken curry
แกงเนื้อ	gairng néu-a	beef curry
แกงจืด	gairng jèut	bland, clear soup
ต้มยำ	dtôm yum	'tom yam' – a spicy soup made with lemon grass
ต้มยำกุ้ง	dtôm yum gŌOng	shrimp 'tom yam'
ต้มยำปลา	dtôm yum bplah	fish 'tom yam'

Meat, fish and egg

ไก่	gài	chicken
เนื้อ	néu-a	beef
หมู	mŏo	pork
เป็ด	bpèt	duck
ปู	bpoo	crab
ปลา	bplah	fish
กุ้ง	gŌOng	shrimp
ไข่	kài	egg
ไก่/หมู/เนื้อ/กุ้งผัดพริก	gài/mŏo/néu-a/gŌOng pùt prik	chicken/pork/beef/shrimp fried with chillies
ไก่/หมู/เนื้อ/ผัดขิง	gài/mŏo/néu-a pùt kīng	chicken/pork/beef fried with ginger
ไก่/หมูผัดหน่อไม้	gài/mŏo pùt nŏr-mái	chicken/pork fried with bamboo shoots
ไก่/หมู/กุ้งผัดใบกระเพรา	gài/mŏo/gŌOng pùt bai gra-prao	chicken/pork/shrimp fried with basil leaves

ไก่/หมู/ปลาผัดเปรี้ยวหวาน	gài/mǎo/bplah pùt bprêe-o wǎhn <i>sweet and sour chicken/pork/fish</i>
เนื้อผัดน้ำมันหอย	néu-a pùt nóm mun hǎy <i>beef fried in oyster sauce</i>
ไก่ทอดกระเทียมพริกไทย	gài tǒt gra-tee-um prík tai <i>chicken fried with garlic and pepper</i>
ไก่/เป็ดย่าง	gài/bpèt yǎhng <i>barbecued chicken/duck</i>
ไข่ดาว	kài dao <i>fried egg</i>
ไข่เจียว	kài jee-o <i>omelette</i>
ไข่ยัดไส้	kài yút sǎi <i>stuffed omelette</i>

10

ไม่เข้าใจ
I don't understand
mǎi kǎo jai

In this unit you will learn

- coping strategies when you don't understand
- how? questions
- don't . . .
- initial consonant clusters
- words with no written vowel symbol

Dialogues

Sue has accompanied some Thai friends to a restaurant.

Chanida	ปลาเค็มมากไหมคะ คุณซู	bplah kem máhk mái ká kOOn Sue?
Sue	อะไรนะคะ พูดอีกทีได้ไหม	a-rai ná ká? poot èek tee dái mái?
Chanida	ปลาเค็มมากไหม	bplah kem máhk mái?
Sue	ไม่เข้าใจ พูดช้า ๆ หน่อยได้ไหม	mái káo jai. poot cháh cháh nòy dái mái?
Chanida	ปลา - เค็ม - ไหม	bplah - kem - mái?
Sue	ไม่รู้จักคำว่า 'เค็ม' ภาษาอังกฤษ แปลว่าอะไร	mái róo-júk kum wâh 'kem'. pah-säh ung-grít bplair wâh a-rai?
Chanida	แปลว่า salty	bplair wâh 'salty'.
Sue	อ้อ เข้าใจแล้ว เค็มค่ะ	òr káo jai láir-o. kem ká.
	'เค็ม' สะกดอย่างไร	'kem' sa-gòt yung-ngai?

bplah	fish	ปลา
kem	salty	เค็ม
tee	time	ที
èek tee	again	อีกที
káo jai	to understand	เข้าใจ
cháh	slow	ช้า
kum	word	คำ
bplair	to translate	แปล
... bplair wâh a-rai?	what does ... mean?	แปลว่าอะไร
sa-gòt	to spell	สะกด
yung-ngai?	how?	อย่างไร

Peter is also in a restaurant. His Thai companions are busy chattering away in Thai until Somchai suddenly turns to him.

Somchai	คุณ Peter ฟังรู้เรื่องไหม	kOOn Peter fung róo réu-ung mái?
Peter	อะไรนะครับ	a-rai ná krúp?
Malee	ฝรั่งง	fa-rùng ngong.
Somchai	ฟังรู้เรื่องไหม	fung róo réu-ung mái?
Peter	ไม่รู้เรื่อง ถ้าพูดเร็วมาก	mái róo réu-ung. tâh poot ray-o máhk
	ผมก็ไม่รู้เรื่องเลย	pôm gôr mái róo réu-ung ler-ee.
Malee	ไม่เป็นไรหรอก เรานินทาคุณเท่านั้น	mái bpen rai ròrk. rao nin-tah kOOn tâo-nún.
Peter	'นินทา' หมายความว่าอะไร	'nin-tah' mái-kwahm wâh a-rai?
Somchai	แปลว่า gossip แต่อย่าไปเชื่อ มาสินะ คุณมาสิ ชอบพูดเล่นเสมอ	bplair wâh 'gossip'. dtàir yâh bpai chiêu-a Malee ná. kOOn Malee chòrp poot lén sa-mêr.

fung	to listen	ฟัง
róo réu-ung	to understand	รู้เรื่อง
ngong	to be dazed, confused	งง
ray-o	quick	เร็ว
mái ... ler-ee	not ... at all	ไม่...เลย
nin-tah	to gossip	นินทา
... mái-kwahm wâh a-rai?	what does ... mean?	... หมายความว่า ว่าอะไร
yâh	don't	อย่า
chiêu-a	to believe	เชื่อ
poot lén	to joke	พูดเล่น

- 1 What was the Thai word that Sue did not know?
- 2 How did she try to ensure that she would remember it?
- 3 How did she answer Chanida's original question?
- 4 Why couldn't Peter understand what his companions were saying?
- 5 What joke did Malee make?
- 6 Why didn't Peter get the joke?

i Although you will find Thais extremely complimentary about your attempts to learn Thai, you will almost certainly feel that your linguistic inadequacies are exposed with alarming frequency in the initial stages. One obvious problem is vocabulary. Thai words sound quite unlike any European language and so there is little scope for latching onto a familiar word and then guessing what people are talking about. Even when you stay within your linguistic limitations, you may find a Thai looking absolutely bewildered by your best attempts, only to repeat, with a sudden expression of enlightenment, *exactly* what you just said. Well, *almost* exactly. Maybe you got a tone wrong, a vowel not quite right, or maybe your Thai friend was simply more accustomed to foreigners speaking Thai with a German accent. The important thing is not to get discouraged by these little setbacks. Relax. Recognize that on some days you are on better form than on others. Don't worry if everything is going over your head. Be prepared to laugh at yourself. But, most important of all, have some positive strategy for dealing with communication breakdowns and try to analyse where your individual weaknesses lie. Learn different ways of asking someone to repeat something – for even the most patient of Thais may tire of the farang whose every other utterance is **a-rai ná?** A knowledge of Thai script is invaluable here, because you can always ask how something is written in Thai (**pah-sáh tai kĕe-un yung-ngai?**); and if you weren't sure what tone the word was when you heard it, you can check from the spelling.

▶ Key phrases and expressions

How to say:

- 1 Pardon?

a-rai ná?

อะไรนะ

- 2 Could you say that again?

pôot èek tee dái mái?

พูดอีกทีได้ไหม

- 3 I don't understand

mái káo jai

ไม่เข้าใจ

mái róo rĕu-ung

ไม่รู้เรื่อง

- 4 Could you speak slowly please?

pôot cháh cháh nòy dái mái? พูดช้า ๆ หน่อยได้ไหม

- 5 I don't know the word

mái róo-jùk kum wáh ...

ไม่รู้จักคำว่า...

- 6 What's that in English?

pah-sáh ung-grít
bplair wáh a-rai?

ภาษาอังกฤษแปลว่าอะไร

- 7 How do you spell/write it?

sa-gòt yung-ngai?

สะกดอย่างไร

kĕe-un yung-ngai?

เขียนอย่างไร

- 8 What does ... mean?

... mǎi kwahm wáh a-rai?

... หมายความว่าอะไร

... bplair wáh a-rai?

... แปลว่าอะไร

Language notes

1 'What does that mean?'

There are two ways of asking what something means: **bplair wáh a-rai?** is, literally, a request for a translation, while **mǎi kwahm wáh a-rai?** is asking for clarification or an explanation:

pah-sáh ung-grít bplair
wáh a-rai?

What's that in English?

kOOOn mǎi kwahm
wáh a-rai?

What do you mean?

2 How? questions

How? questions which ask about the manner in which something is done follow the pattern verb + **yung-ngai?** (*how?*):

sa-gòt yung-ngai?

How do you spell it?

bpen yung-ngai (báhng)?

How are things?

bpai yung-ngai?

How are we going?

If the sentence includes a grammatical object, this commonly occurs before the verb:

kem sa-gòt yung-ngai? How do you spell 'salt'?
ma-môo-ung gin yung-ngai? How do you eat mangoes?

The Thai spelling of *how?* suggests that the correct pronunciation is *yàhng-rài* rather than *yung-ngai*. In normal speech, however, the first vowel is shortened, the low tone changes to a neutral mid tone and the final *ng* in the first syllable and initial *r* in the second syllable are assimilated into a *ng* sound. In fact, when greeting each other informally, Thais will often go a step further and say, simply, *bpen ngai?*

How? questions which ask how tall/heavy/long (in linear measurement or time) something is use *tào-rài?* (*how much?*):

sõong (high/tall) tào-rài? How high/tall is it?
kOOn nùk (heavy) tào-rài? How heavy are you/What do you weigh?
ree-un pah-sǎh tai nahn tào-rài? How long have you studied Thai?

3 róo rêu-ung

róo rêu-ung like *kào jai* means *to understand*. It often occurs after the verbs *fung* (*to listen*) and *àhn* (*to read*) as a 'resultative verb', where it indicates the 'result' (i.e. understanding) that follows the action of the first verb (i.e. listening, reading):

róo rêu-ung mái? Do you understand?
fung róo rêu-ung mái? Do you understand? (by listening)
àhn róo rêu-ung mái? Do you understand? (by reading)

It is the resultative verb that is used for 'yes' answers and which is negated for 'no' answers:

fung róo rêu-ung mái? Do you understand? (by listening)
 – *róo rêu-ung/mái róo rêu-ung.* – Yes/no.

Similarly, in negative statements, it is the resultative verb that is negated:

mái róo rêu-ung. I don't understand.
fung mái róo rêu-ung. I don't understand. (what I hear)
àhn mái róo rêu-ung. I don't understand. (what I read)

4 'Not ... at all'

The pattern *mái* + verb + *ler-ee* (*not ... at all*) is used to intensify negative statements:

põm mái róo rêu-ung ler-ee. I don't understand at all.
mái nàh yòo ler-ee. It's not very nice to live in at all.
mái mee ler-ee. There aren't any at all.
mái pairng ler-ee. It's not at all expensive.

It is important to distinguish between *mái ... ler-ee* and *mái ... ròrk* (see unit 3), for both can be translated as *not ... at all*. *mái ... ler-ee* is a statement of fact or opinion, whereas *mái ... ròrk* is a statement of contradiction:

pairng jung ler-ee. It's ever so expensive.
 – *mái pairng ròrk.* – No it isn't. / Not at all.

5 yàh

Negative commands follow the pattern *yàh* (*don't*) + verb; they can be made milder by the addition of the mood particle *ná* (*right?*, *OK?*):

yàh leum ná? Don't forget, OK?
yàh tum pèt máhk ná? Don't make it very spicy, OK?
yàh kùp ray-o ná? Don't drive fast, OK?

In the second dialogue, Somchai says *yàh bpai chêu-a kOOn Malee ná*. This usage of *bpai* has an exact equivalent in English: *Don't go believing Khun Malee*.

6 pôot lên

When the word *lên* (*to play*) follows another verb, it indicates that the action of the first verb is being carried out for fun:

<i>pôot</i>	<i>to speak</i>	<i>pôot lên</i>	<i>to joke</i>
<i>dern</i>	<i>to walk</i>	<i>dern lên</i>	<i>to go for a walk</i>
<i>àhn</i>	<i>to read</i>	<i>àhn lên</i>	<i>to read for pleasure</i>
<i>gin</i>	<i>to eat</i>	<i>gin lên</i>	<i>to eat 'for fun' (e.g. mid-meal snacks)</i>

Exercises

- 1 How would you:
- tell someone you did not understand?
 - ask someone to repeat something?
 - ask someone what something means?
 - ask someone to speak slowly?
 - ask someone how to write something?
- 2 A Korean businessman who speaks no English and less Thai than Peter is having difficulty following a conversation among his Thai hosts. He keeps asking Peter what various words mean. What alternative Thai words can Peter suggest?
- bpra-tâyt* bplair wâh a-rai?
 - tahn* bplair wâh a-rai?
 - sâhp* bplair wâh a-rai?
 - mâi róa rêu-ung* bplair wâh a-rai?
- 3 Use ... *yung-ngai?* to seek advice on how to do the following, making the italicized word the first word in your question:
- go to *Chiangmai*.
 - to eat *mangoes*.
 - use (*chái*) the *telephone*.
 - to write *sa-bai*
- 4 Answer these questions with an emphatic *no*, using the pattern *mâi ... ler-ee*:
- chôrp* mái?
 - dee mái?
 - ao mái?
 - káo jai mái?
 - fung róa rêu-ung mái?
- 5 Here's Peter, locked in conversation with Malee and stubbornly refusing to be defeated by his limited vocabulary. What do you think he said?
- Malee** ker-ee bpai doo nŭng tai mái?
Peter _____
Malee ker-ee bpai doo nŭng tai mái?
Peter _____
Malee ker-ee - bpai - doo - nŭng - tai - mái?
Peter _____
Malee nŭng bplair wâh 'movie'.
 káo jai mái?

Peter

Malee ker-ee bpai doo mái?

Peter mâi ker-ee.

Reading and writing

1 Words beginning with consonant clusters

All the words that you have read up to now have begun with either a single consonant or a vowel sound. In this unit we are going to learn how to read words that begin with a consonant cluster (two consonant sounds) – words like *krúp*, *glùp*, *gwàh* and so on. The following consonant clusters exist in Thai; knowing which consonant clusters can exist at the beginning of a word will help you to avoid misreading certain two-syllable words:

กร-	คร-	ขร-	ดฺร-	ปร-	พร-
gr-	kr-	kr-	dtr-	bpr-	pr-
กฺล-	คฺล-	ขล-		ปล-	พล-
gl-	kl-	kl-		bpl-	pl-
กว-	คว-	ขว-			
gw-	kw-	kw-			

When it comes to reading a word like *ครัป*, the tone should clearly be high, since (i) it is a dead syllable, (ii) both consonants in the cluster are low class and (iii) the vowel is short.

But in many words the two consonants at the beginning of a word belong to different classes. In such cases, it is the class of the *first* consonant that determines the tone:

ขวา ไก่ ปลุก
 kwáh glái bplòok

2 Words with no vowel symbols

In unit 4 you met words like *kon* and *gòt* which consisted of two consonants but no written vowel symbol. Two-syllable words, consisting of three consonant symbols and no vowel symbols are much less common. In such cases, the first vowel is -a and the second -o:

ถนน สงบ ขนมห
 ta-nǒn sa-ngòp ka-nǒm

More common are words in which there is a vowel symbol in the second syllable, but where a short -a vowel has to be supplied in the first:

ตลาด สนาม สบาย ชนิตา
 dta-làht sa-nǎhm sa-bai cha-ní-dah

Since these words begin with two consonants, they look very similar to those that begin with a consonant cluster. But if you check the consonant cluster chart, you will see that the *sounds* dtl-, sn- and sb- do not exist at the beginning of Thai words. So the short -a vowel has to be added after the initial consonant. The first syllable in words like this is pronounced with a mid tone.

The tone of the second syllable is determined by the *second* consonant in the cluster unless it is one of those consonants you learned in unit 1 (i.e. ง น ม ร ย ล ฎ); if the second consonant is a unit 1 consonant then the class of the *first* consonant determines the tone:

ขบวน สภาพ สนาม สง่า
 ka-boo-un sa-pâhp sa-nǎhm sa-ngàh

Note: Words beginning ปร- are pronounced with an -or vowel between the first and second consonants, not an -a vowel:

บริการ บริเวณ บริษัท
 bor-ri-gahn bor-ri-wayn bor-ri-sùt

Reading practice

1 Words

The first two letters in these words form a consonant cluster:

กว่า ขวา กรุง ประตู ปลา
 เปลา่ ตรง ไกล ไกล่ กลับ
 ไคร คล้าย ครับ ความ ประเทศ

The first two letters in the following words do not form a consonant cluster and therefore require a vowel to be supplied:

ถนน ตลก ชยัน สยาม สภาพ
 ขนาด สนั่น สถานที่ สบาย บริษัท
 ผลอง ผลาค ผรั่ง ชยะ บริการ

2 Conversation

- Interviewer** คุณอยู่เมืองไทยนานไหมครับ
Businessman ไม่นานครับ
 ประมาณ ๖ เดือนเท่านั้น
Interviewer คุณพูดไทยเก่งมากครับ
 เหมือนเป็นเจ้าของภาษา
Businessman ไม่หรอกครับ
 เวลาคนไทยพูด
 บางครั้งผมก็ฟังไม่รู้เรื่องเลย
 แล้วถ้าผมพูดภาษาไทย
 คนไทยก็ฟังไม่รู้เรื่องเหมือนกัน
Interviewer คุณเรียนภาษาไทยที่ไหน
Businessman เรียนที่โรงเรียนสอนภาษาอยู่แถว
 ถนนสุขุมวิทแล้วใช้ตำราที่กับเทปที่บ้าน
Interviewer ภาษาไทยยากไหมครับ
Businessman ยากครับ
 แต่ถ้าไม่มีเทปฟัง ก็คงยากกว่า
Interviewer แล้วคุณอ่านและเขียนภาษาไทยเป็นไหม
Businessman อ่านเป็นนิดหน่อยครับ ถ้าเป็นคำง่าย ๆ
 แต่เขียนไม่ค่อยได้

เหมือน	<i>like, similar</i>
เจ้าของภาษา	<i>native speaker (literally, owner of the language)</i>
เวลา	<i>time</i>
บางครั้ง	<i>sometimes</i>
เหมือนกัน	<i>likewise</i>
โรงเรียน	<i>school</i>
ใช้	<i>to use</i>
ตำรา	<i>textbook</i>
กับ	<i>with, and</i>
เทป	<i>tape</i>
ที่บ้าน	<i>at home</i>
คง	<i>sure to, bound to</i>
คำ	<i>word</i>

- 1 How long has the businessman been in Thailand?
- 2 What communication problems does he sometimes encounter?
- 3 How did he learn Thai?
- 4 Can he read and write Thai?

chôrp yòo grOng-tâyp mái?

do you like living in Bangkok?
ชอบอยู่กรุงเทพฯไหม

In this unit you will learn

- how to talk about living and working in Bangkok
- how to talk about things that happened in the past
- some ways of intensifying adjectives and adverbs
- some more uses of gôr
- consonants: ณ ฌ ฎ ฐ ฑ ฒ พ ษ
- vowels: เ-ะ แ-ะ โ-ะ เ-อะ เ-าะ

▶ Dialogues

Chanida is asking Sue how she likes living in Bangkok.

Chanida	คุณชอบอยู่ กรุงเทพฯไหม	kOOn Sue chôrp yòo grOOnng-tâyp mái?
Sue	ชอบค่ะ คิดว่าน่าสนใจมาก	chôrp kâ. kít wâh nâh sòn jai máhk.
Chanida	จริงหรือคะ ฉันว่ากรุงเทพฯ ตอนนี้ไม่น่าอยู่เลย พ่อแม่บอกว่า เมื่อก่อนรถไม่ค่อยมี ตึกสูง ๆ ก็ไม่ค่อยมี ตอนนี้มีคลอง มีต้นไม้สวย ๆ แล้วอากาศสะอาด	jing lěr ká? chún wâh grOOnng-tâyp dtorn née mâi nâh yòo ler-ee. pôr mâir bòrk wâh mêu-a gòrn rót mâi kôy mee, dtèuk sǝng sǝng gôr mâi kôy mee. dtorn nún mee klornng mee dtôn-mái sǝo-ay sǝo-ay láir-o ah-gàht sa-àht.
Sue	คุณชนิดาเป็นคน กรุงเทพฯใช่ไหมคะ	kOOn cha-ní-dah bpen kon grOOnng-tâyp châi mái ká?
Chanida	ไม่ใช่ค่ะ พ่อแม่ย้ายมาอยู่ที่นี้ เมื่อฉันยังเด็ก เมื่อก่อนฉันอยู่ ภาคใต้ เกิดที่จังหวัด ภูเก็ต	mâi châi kâ. pôr mâir yái mah yòo tée-née mêu-a chún yung dèk. mêu-a gòrn chún yòo pâhk dtâi. gèrt tée jung-wùt poo-gèt.

chôrp	<i>to like</i>	ชอบ
dtorn née	<i>now</i>	ตอนนี้
nâh yòo	<i>habitable</i>	น่าอยู่
mâir	<i>mother</i>	แม่
gòrn	<i>before</i>	ก่อน
mêu-a gòrn	<i>formerly, before</i>	เมื่อก่อน
dtèuk	<i>building</i>	ตึก
klornng	<i>canal</i>	คลอง
dtôn-mái	<i>tree</i>	ต้นไม้
mêu-a	<i>when</i>	เมื่อ
yung	<i>still</i>	ยัง
dèk	<i>child</i>	เด็ก
pâhk dtâi	<i>the South</i>	ภาคใต้
gèrt	<i>to be born</i>	เกิด
poo-gèt	<i>Phuket</i>	ภูเก็ต

▶ Peter is asking Khun Somchai about his job.

Peter	งานตอนนี้ เป็นอย่างไร	ngahn dtorn née bpen yung-ngai?
Somchai	ก็...ดีเหมือนกัน เงินเดือนก็ใช้ได้ แต่บางครั้งคิด ว่าน่าเบื่อ ต้องตื่นแต่เช้า แล้วกลับบ้านตึก รถมันติดจังเลย ทุกวันกลับบ้าน เสียเวลา สองชั่วโมงกว่า รู้สึกว่าย่นะ	gôr... dee mêu-un gun. ngern deu-un gôr cháí dâi. dtàir bahng krúng kít wâh nâh bèu-a. dtòrng dtèun dtàir cháo láir-o glùp bâhn dèuk. rót mun dtit jung ler-ee. tÓOk wun glùp bâhn sǝe-a way-lah sǝrng chǝo-a-mohng gwâh. róo-sèuk wâh yâir ná.

Peter	ใช่ แะ่จริง ๆ	chái. yáir jing jing.
Somchai	แล้วอากาศมันไม่ดี บางครั้งคิดว่า อยากจะย้ายไปอยู่ ต่างจังหวัด อากาศมันดีกว่า สะอาดกว่า... แล้ว รถไม่ติด คนไม่แน่น เหมือนที่กรุงเทพ ฯ	láir-o ah-gàht mun mái dee. bahng krúng kít wâh yâhk ja yái bpai yòo dtàhng jung-wùt. ah-gàht mun dee gwàh, sa-àht gwàh ... láir-o rót mái dtit, kon mái nâirn mêu-un tée grOOng-táyp.

ngahn	work	งาน
bpen yung-ngai?	how is it?	เป็นอย่างไร
gôr ...	well ...	ก็...
... mêu-un gun	fairly ...	เหมือนกัน
ngern deu-un	salary	เงินเดือน
chái dâi	reasonable, acceptable	ใช้ได้
dtàir	but	แต่
krúng	time(s)	ครั้ง
nâh bèu-a	boring	น่าเบื่อ
dtèun	to wake up	ตื่น
(dtàir) cháo	(from) early morning	(แต่)เช้า
bâhn	house, home	บ้าน
dèuk	late at night	ดึก
mun	it	มัน
jung ler-ee	really, very	จริงๆ
tóOk	every	ทุก
wun	day	วัน

sěe-a	to spend, waste	เสีย
way-lah	time	เวลา
chôo-a-mohng	hour	ชั่วโมง
... gwàh	more than ...	กว่า
yâir	to be a nuisance, a hassle	แยะ
ah-gàht	air, weather, climate	อากาศ
yái	to move	ย้าย
dtàhng jung-wùt	up country, outside Bangkok	ต่างจังหวัด
sa-àht	clean	สะอาด
nâirn	to be crowded	แน่น
mêu-un	like, similar, as	เหมือน

- 1 Does Chanida like Bangkok?
- 2 Where does she come from?
- 3 When did she move to Bangkok?
- 4 How does she describe what Bangkok was like in the past?
- 5 What does Somchai feel about his salary?
- 7 How long does it take Somchai to get home from work?
- 8 What advantages does Somchai believe that working upcountry has over Bangkok?

i Bangkok has the reputation of being one of the world's most congested cities; while special bus lanes, elaborate one-way detours and the wide-scale construction of flyovers and elevated bypasses has improved things considerably over the last decade, the traffic situation continues to seriously affect the quality of life of everyone in the city.

Bangkok residents appear resigned to this and few would consider forgoing the economic opportunities afforded by the capital in favour of a better living environment upcountry. The massive building boom of the late 1980s and early 1990s, during which multistorey office blocks, shopping centres and condominiums seemed to spring up, chaotically, almost overnight, further added to the environmental nightmare. Despite this, many people, both Thai and foreigner, find Bangkok has a richness and vitality that are quite unique.

▶ Key phrases and expressions

How to:

- 1 ask someone's opinion of something and state one's own opinion

... bpen yung-ngai? ... เป็นอย่างไร

pôm/chún wâh ... ผม/ฉันว่า...

kit wâh ... คิดว่า...

róo-sèuk wâh ... รู้สึกว่า...

- 2 talk about things that happened in the past

mêu-a gòrn ... เมื่อก่อน...

mêu-a chún yung dèk ... เมื่อฉันยังเด็ก...

mêu-a chún ah-yóo hâh kòo-up ...
เมื่อฉันอายุห้าขวบ...

mêu-a sâhm bpee gòrn ... เมื่อสามปีก่อน...

- 3 express approval in different ways

dee (mâhk) jing jing ดี (มาก) จริงๆ

dee (mâhk) jung ler-ee ดี (มาก) จังเลย

dee mâhk ler-ee ดีมากเลย

dee mâhk ดีมาก

Language notes

1 nâh + verb

nâh occurs before a verb to form an adjective that carries the sense *worthy of*...:

bèu-a	to be bored	nâh bèu-a	boring
sòn jai	to be interested in	nâh sòn jai	interesting
yòo	to live	nâh yòo	habitable, nice to live in
rúk	to love	nâh rúk	lovable, sweet, cute
gin	to eat	nâh gin	tasty

chún kit wâh nâh sòn jai mâhk. I think it is very interesting.
grOng-tâyp mâi nâh yòo ler-ee. Bangkok is not a habitable place at all.

ngahn dtorn née nâh bèu-a. Work at the moment is boring.

2 mêu-a

mêu-a (*when*) is used when talking about things that happened in the past; *previously/before* can be expressed by *mêu-a gòrn*, while *mêu-a* + time expression + *gòrn* is one of several ways of expressing ... ago:

mêu-a gòrn rót mâi kôy mee. Before, there were hardly any cars.

mêu-a gòrn chún yòo pâhk tâi. Before, I lived in the South.

mêu-a chún yung dèk. when I was still a child

mêu-a chún ah-yóo hâh kòo-up. when I was five years old

mêu-a sâhm bpee gòrn. three years ago

3 gôr

gôr has occurred several times, in idiomatic expressions such as ... gôr láir-o gun (unit 2) and ... gôr dâi (unit 9) and in conditional sentences (*tâh* ... gôr ..., unit 9). Three further uses are illustrated in this unit. First, *gôr* can mean *too, also*:

rót mâi mee, dtèuk sòong gôr. There were no cars and no tall buildings either/too.

kon tai yér, fa-rùng gôr yér. lots of Thais and lots of farangs, too

Second, it occurs at the beginning of a sentence as a hesitation device, rather like English *well/er* ...:

ngahn dtorn née bpen yung-ngai? How's work these days?
- gôr ... dee mêu-un gun. - Well, ... it's OK.

Third, when the topic of the sentence occurs at the beginning of the sentence, *gôr* often occurs in the pattern *sòo-un* (*as for*) + topic + *gôr* + verb:

sòo-un ah-hâhn tai pôm gôr chôrp. As for Thai food, I like it.

sòo-un pah-sâh jeen gôr yâhk bpai. As for Chinese, it's too difficult.

In spoken Thai, *sòo-un* is often dropped:

ngern deu-un gôr cháí dâi. As for the salary, it's alright.

ah-hâhn tai gôr a-ròy. As for Thai food, it's tasty.

4 ... mêu-un gun

mêu-un gun literally means *likewise, similarly* and is often used in this way:

mêu-un gun mâhk. They are very similar.

mâi mêu-un gun. They are not the same.

The phrase also has an idiomatic usage, illustrated in the dialogue, indicating a qualified or lukewarm 'yes' response:

dee mái? – gôr dee mễu-un gun.	<i>Is it good?</i> – <i>Well, it's quite good.</i>
chôrp mái? – gôr chôrp mễu-un gun.	<i>Do you like it?</i> – <i>Well, yes, I quite like it.</i>

5 Noun + pronoun + verb

The pattern noun + pronoun + verb, where the pronoun refers to the noun, occurs commonly in spoken Thai. You may hear some Thais carry the construction across to English, with statements like *My teacher he is not nice*:

rót mun dtít. ah-gàht mun dee gwàh. sòm-chai káo mâi mah.	<i>The traffic is jammed.</i> (traffic-it-stuck) <i>The air is better.</i> (air-it-better) <i>Somchai is not coming.</i> (Somchai-he-not-come)
---	--

6 Intensification

The easiest way to intensify an adjective or adverb is to add *mâhk* (*very, much*) after it. In this unit two additional ways of intensification are introduced, adding *jing jing* or *jung ler-ee* after the adjective, both of which can be translated as *really . . .* or *ever so . . .*. You can also use *mâhk* in front of *jing jing* and *jung ler-ee*; in the latter case it is very often abbreviated in speech to *. . . mâhk ler-ee*. You now have quite a selection of ways for intensifying adjectives, in both positive and negative ways:

dee (mâhk) jing jing.	<i>It's really (very) good.</i>
dee (mâhk) jung ler-ee.	<i>It's really (very) good.</i>
dee mâhk ler-ee.	<i>It's really very good.</i>
dee mâhk.	<i>It's very good.</i>
dee.	<i>It's good.</i>
gôr . . . dee mễu-un gun.	<i>Well . . . it's good.</i> (some reservations)
mâi kôy dee (táo-rài).	<i>It's not very good.</i>
mâi dee.	<i>It's not good/it's bad.</i>
mâi dee ler-ee.	<i>It's not good at all/it's very bad.</i>

7 'More than . . .'

The basic pattern expressing the idea of *more than . . .* is (noun +) *mâhk gwàh* + number + classifier:

mee fa-rùng mâhk gwàh síp kon.	<i>There were more than ten farangs.</i>
chún gin gah-fair mâhk gwàh sề tôo-ay.	<i>I drank more than four cups of coffee.</i>

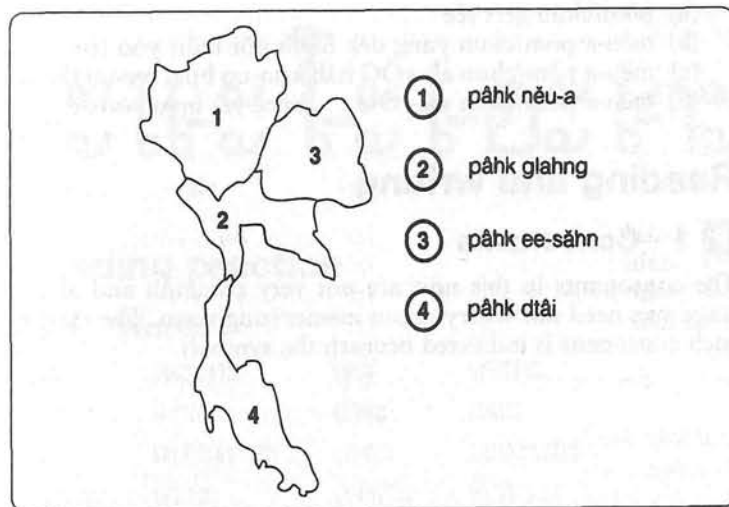
Note that the pattern (noun +) number + classifier + *gwàh* conveys the idea of a fraction – but not a whole unit more:

sởng chồo-a-mohng gwàh	<i>more than two hours</i> (but not three)
------------------------	---

8 Regions

Thailand is divided into four regions (*pâhk*), each of which has its own distinct dialect and traditional customs:

pâhk nễu-a	<i>the North</i>	ภาคเหนือ
pâhk dtái	<i>the South</i>	ภาคใต้
pâhk glahng	<i>the Central Region</i>	ภาคกลาง
pâhk ee-sảhn	<i>the Northeast</i>	ภาคอีสาน



Exercises

- 1 Answer these questions with an emphatic *yes*, using the pattern ... máhk jing jing or ... máhk jung ler-ee:
- chǒp mái?
 - dee mái?
 - náh bèu-a mái?
 - gairng gài pèt mái?
 - ree-un tée a-may-ri-gah pairng mái?
- 2 You are weighing up the advantages and disadvantages of living in Bangkok with living outside the capital. Which statements would you list under each heading?
- yòo grOng-táyp. ... (b) yòo dtàhng jung-wùt. ...
 - ah-gàht sa-àht gwàh.
 - ngern deu-un gôr cháí dái.
 - kon nàirn.
 - dtǒrng dtèun dtàir cháo láir-o glùp bàhn dèuk.
 - rót mái dtít.
 - ah-gàht mái dee.
 - kon mái kôy nàirn.
 - rót dtít jung ler-ee.
 - dtèuk sǒng sǒng mái kôy mee.
 - ngern deu-un mái kôy dee.
- 3 Complete the following sentences:
- pǒm/chún gèrt tée ...
 - mêu-a pǒm/chún yung dèk bàhn pôr mair yòo tée ...
 - mêu-a pǒm/chún ah-yÓO hâh kòo-up bpai ree-un tée ...
 - mêu-a pǒm/chún ah-yÓO ... bpai yái bpai yòo ...

Reading and writing

1 Consonants

The consonants in this unit are not very common and at this stage you need not worry about memorizing them. The class of each consonant is indicated beneath the symbol:



ch

Low



d

Mid



dt

Mid



t

High



t

Low



t

Low



l

Low



h

Low

2 Vowel shortener: -ะ

You have already met the vowel symbol -ะ as a short a vowel (unit 9).

The same symbol also has a completely different function, in shortening the following long vowels: เ-, แ-, โ-, เ-อ, and in changing the pronunciation of เ-า:

เ-ะ แ-ะ โ-ะ เ-อ-ะ เ-า-ะ

-e -air -o -er -or

Reading practice

1 Words

เยะ	ละทะ	เตะ	เกะกะ
และ	แกะ	แพะ	แตะ
ไต่ะ	เลอะเทอะ	เยอะ	เยอะแยะ
เพราะ	เกาะ	เหมาะ	หัวเราะ

▶ 2 Passage

Each year thousands of people leave their villages in rural Thailand and flock to Bangkok in search of work. While some are seasonal migrants, others, through either poverty or ambition, will never return. In this passage, a young girl, Tui, talks about leaving home and going to work in a noodle shop in Bangkok. Notice that she refers to herself as *Tui* rather than using *chún*. Using one's name or nickname instead of *I* is very common in girls' speech; a lot of foreign men pick up the habit and sound rather strange to Thais.

ตุ้ยเป็นคนอีสานค่ะ อยู่หมู่บ้านเล็กๆ ที่จังหวัดหนองคาย เมื่อก่อนตุ้ยทำนา แต่ไม่ชอบ เพราะว่าป็นงานหนักมาก ตุ้ยก็คิดว่าย้ายมาทำงานที่นี่ดีกว่า ตอนนีทำงานอยู่ที่ร้านก๋วยเตี๋ยวอยู่แถวสุขุมวิท ล้างชามล้างจานทั้งวัน บางวันคิดว่าน่าเบื่อ แต่ไม่อยากจะกลับบ้านเพราะว่า ไม่อยากทำนาและเงินเดือนที่นี้ก็ได้ ดีกว่าต่างจังหวัด

คนอีสาน	a Northerner
หมู่บ้าน	village
เล็ก ๆ (lék lék)	(the symbol ๑ means 'repeat' the previous word)
หนองคาย	Nongkhai
ทำนา	rice farming
หนัก	heavy; hard (work)
ร้านก๋วยเตี๋ยว	noodle shop
ล้าง	to wash
ทั้งวัน	all day

- What work did Tui do in her village?
- Why didn't she like it?
- What does she do all day long in the noodle shop?
- Is she happy in her work?
- Why doesn't she want to go home?

▶ 3 Passage

Here is a little more information about Chanida's family:

คุณชนิดาเป็นคนภาคใต้ เกิดที่จังหวัดภูเก็ต พ่อเป็นตำรวจ แม่เป็นแม่บ้าน มีลูกสามคน พ่อแม่คุณชนิดากับพี่น้องย้ายมาอยู่ที่นี้เมื่อคุณชนิดาอายุห้าขวบ ตอนนี้น้องชายคุณชนิดาเรียนอยู่ที่มหาวิทยาลัยมหิดล เขาอยากจะเป็นหมอ คุณพ่อชนิดาอยากจะทำให้น้องชายไปเรียนต่อที่ประเทศอเมริกา

ตำรวจ	policeman (dtum-ròo-ut*)
แม่บ้าน	housewife
มหาวิทยาลัยมหิดล	Mahidol University
ต่อ	to continue
เรียนต่อ	to continue one's studies

* The second syllable is pronounced with a low tone, not a falling tone, as might be expected from the rules you have learned.

- How many brothers and sisters does Chanida have?
- How old was Chanida when the family moved to Bangkok?
- What is Chanida's younger brother doing at the moment?
- What plans does Chanida's father have for his son's future?

▶ 4 Dialogue

And here's Peter asking Somchai about his origins.

- Peter** คุณสมชายเป็นคนภาคเหนือใช่ไหม
Somchai ใช่ ผมเกิดที่เชียงใหม่
 พ่อแม่ย้ายมาอยู่ที่นี้เมื่อสามสิบปีก่อนเมื่อผมยังเด็ก พ่ออยากให้ผมเรียนที่นี่ เพราะว่าพ่อคิดว่าโรงเรียนที่นี่ดีกว่า
Peter ชอบอยู่ที่นี้ไหม
Somchai ไม่ค่อยชอบเท่าไร ที่นี้รถติดจังเลย อยู่เชียงใหม่ อากาศสะอาดกว่าและรถไม่ติดเหมือนที่นี่

- (a) What province was Somchai born in?
 (b) How long ago did his parents move to Bangkok?
 (c) Why did the family move to Bangkok?
 (d) In what ways does Somchai feel that his place of birth is better than Bangkok?

12

rót òrk gèe mohng?
 what time does the
 coach leave?
 รถออกกี่โมง

In this unit you will learn

- how to make enquiries about travel arrangements
- how to tell the time
- miscellaneous spelling rules

Dialogues

- Sue** เราคิดจะไปเที่ยว นครพนมอาทิตย์หน้า ไปรถไฟดีไหม
- Chanida** นั่งรถไฟไป นครพนมไม่ได้ ถ้าอยากไปรถไฟ ก็ต้องต่อรถทัวร์ที่ ขอนแก่น
- Sue** อ้อ หรือคะ ขอนแก่นอยู่ห่างจาก นครพนมกี่กิโลคะ
- Chanida** คิดว่าต้องนั่งรถทัวร์ ประมาณ ๖ ชั่วโมง
- Sue** โอ้โฮ นานจริง ๆ
- Chanida** ค่ะ ฉันว่านั่งรถทัวร์ จากกรุงเทพฯ ดีกว่า แต่ควรจองตั๋ว ล่วงหน้า

têe-o	to visit, go out	เที่ยว
na-korn pa-nom	Nakhorn Phanom	นครพนม
ah-tít	week	อาทิตย์
nâh	next	หน้า
rót fai	train	รถไฟ
nûng	to sit; travel by	นั่ง
dtòr	to continue	ต่อ
rót too-a	tour bus	รถทัวร์
körn-gàirn	Khonkaen	ขอนแก่น
hàhng jàhk	to be far from	ห่างจาก

gi-loh	kilometre	กิโล
koo-un (ja)	should	ควร(จะ)
jorng	to book	จอง
dtöo-a	ticket	ตั๋ว
lôo-ung nâh	in advance	ล่วงหน้า

Peter is at the Northern Bus Terminal in Bangkok, trying to book tickets for a trip to the Northeast.

- Peter** ขอโทษครับ ไปนครพนมจองตั๋ว ที่ไหน
- Clerk** ที่นี้คะ จะไปเมื่อไร
- Peter** คิดจะไปพรุ่งนี้
- Clerk** พรุ่งนี้เข้าเต็มแล้ว คีนพรุ่งนี้ได้ไหมคะ
- Peter** ใต้ครับ รถออกกี่โมง
- Clerk** ออกสี่ทุ่มครึ่งคะ
- Peter** ใช้เวลาเดินทาง กี่ชั่วโมงครับ
- Clerk** ประมาณแปด ชั่วโมงคะ ถึงนครพนม ประมาณตีห้า
- Peter** ตัวใบละเท่าไรครับ
- Clerk** ใบละสองร้อยห้าสิบบาทคะ
- Peter** ดีครับ เอาสองใบ แล้วขึ้นรถที่ไหน
- kör-tòht krúp.
bpai na-korn pa-nom jorng dtöo-a tée-nâi?
tée-nêe kâ.
ja bpai méu-rài?
kít ja bpai prÓOng nêe.
prÓOng nêe cháo dtem láir-o.
keun prÓOng nêe dâi mái ká?
dâi krúp.
rót òrk gèe mohng?
òrk sèe tÓOm kréung kâ.
cháí way-lah dern tahng gèe chòo-a-mohng krúp?
bpra-mahn bpàirt chòo-a-mohng kâ.
tèung na-korn pa-nom bpra-mahn dtee hâh.
dtöo-a bai la táo-rài krúp?
bai la sörng røy hâh
sip bàht kâ.
dee krúp. ao sörng bai.
láir-o kêun rót tée-nâi?

prÓong née	tomorrow	พรุ่งนี้
cháo	morning	เช้า
dtem (láir-o)	full	เต็ม(แล้ว)
keun	night	คืน
rót may	bus	รถเมล์
gèe mohng?	what time?	กี่โมง
sèe tÓOm	10.00 p.m.	สิบโมง
krêung	half	ครึ่ง
sèe tÓOm krêung	10.30 p.m.	สิบโมงครึ่ง
cháí	to use	ใช้
cháí way-lah	to take time	ใช้เวลา
dern tahng	to travel	เดินทาง
dtee hâh	5.00 a.m.	ตีห้า
bai	(classifier for ticket)	ใบ
kêun	to get on	ขึ้น

- 1 When does Peter want to go to Nakhorn Phanom?
- 2 What time does his bus leave?
- 3 How long is the journey?
- 4 How much does his ticket cost?

i Travel outside Bangkok is cheap and convenient. Perhaps the best way to travel up country is by air-conditioned tour bus; if you can arrange for a daytime rather than overnight departure, this will give you a good opportunity to get some impression of the rural landscape in relative comfort. Tour buses are operated both by the state-owned Mass Transport Organization (MTO) and private companies. They operate a frequent and efficient service to every province in the country. Refreshments are served en route and, on longer journeys, a simple meal is provided at a highway cafe on showing your ticket. When travelling up country it is normally necessary to book in advance. MTO buses, or **rót bor kór sǎr** as they are known by the Thai acronym, can be booked at the Northern, Eastern or Southern Bus Terminals.

▶ Key phrases and expressions

How to:

- 1 ask where to book tickets
jorng dtóo-a tée-nǎi? จองตั๋วที่ไหน
- 2 ask what time the bus leaves/arrives
rót may òrk gèe mohng? รถเมล์ออกกี่โมง
rót may tǔng gèe mohng? รถเมล์ถึงกี่โมง
- 3 ask how long the journey takes
cháí way-lah dern tahng gèe chòo-a mohng? ใช้เวลาเดินทางกี่ชั่วโมง
- 4 ask where to get on (off) the bus
kêun (long) rót may tée-nǎi? ขึ้น(ลง)รถเมล์ที่ไหน

Language notes

1 tée-o

tée-o occurs most commonly as a verb meaning *to visit (places)*. *bpai tée-o (I'm going out)* is a deliberately vague response to the informal greeting *bpai nǎi? (Where are you going?)* while *tée-o pòo-yǐng* is a common euphemism for 'visiting' prostitutes. Note that a different verb, *yêe-um*, is used for visiting people:

rao kít ja bpai tée-o	We're thinking of visiting
na-korn pa-nom.	Nakhorn Phanom.
bpai nǎi?	Where are you going?
- bpai tée-o.	- Out.
káo chòrp tée-o pòo-yǐng.	He likes 'visiting' prostitutes.
wun la sǒng tée-o	two trips a day
chún ja bpai yêe-um pèu-un.	I'm going to visit a friend.

2 'By train'

No preposition is needed in Thai to translate *by* in expressions like *by bus, by train, by car* and so on. It is sufficient to use the pattern **bpai + vehicle**:

rao ja bpai rót may. We are going by bus.

Alternatively, the pattern **nûng** (*to sit*)/**kùp** (*to drive*) + vehicle + **bpai/mah** can be used to specify whether someone is a passenger or driver and whether they are coming or going:

nûng rót fai bpai na-korn pa-nom mâi dâi.	<i>You can't go to Nakhorn Phanom by train.</i>
dtông nûng rót too-a hòk chòo-a-mohng.	<i>You have to travel by tour bus for six hours.</i>
pòm kùp rót mah.	<i>I drove here (by car).</i>

3 Distances

The distance in kilometres between two places is expressed by the pattern place A + **yòo** + **hàhng jàhk** + place B + number + **gi-loh**:

nõrng-kai yòo hàhng jàhk grÔong-tâyp 614 gi-loh.	<i>Nongkhai is 614 kilometres from Bangkok.</i>
rohng ree-un yòo hàhng jàhk bahn sip nah-tee.	<i>The school is ten minutes from home.</i>

4 'Tomorrow morning/evening'

Notice that **prÔong née** (*tomorrow*) occurs before **cháo** (*morning*) but after **keun** (*night*):

prÔong née cháo	<i>tomorrow morning</i>
prÔong née bài	<i>tomorrow afternoon</i>
prÔong née yen	<i>tomorrow (early) evening</i>
but	
keun prÔong née	<i>tomorrow night</i>

5 Asking the time

To ask what time something happens, the pattern verb + **gèe mohng?** is used; *what time is it?* is **gèe mohng láir-o?**:

rót òrk gèe mohng?	<i>What time does the bus leave?</i>
gèe mohng láir-o?	<i>What time is it?</i>

When asking how many hours something takes, the word **chòo-a mohng** (*hour*) is used:

gèe chòo-a mohng?	<i>how many hours?</i>
chái way-lah gèe chòo-a mohng?	<i>How many hours does it take?</i>

6 Telling the time

Hours

In the traditional Thai system of telling the time, the day is divided into four sections of six hours, whereby 7 a.m. and 7 p.m. both become *one o'clock*, 8 a.m. and 8 p.m. *two o'clock* and so on. In telling the time, a specific word is used to distinguish each of these four periods of the day:

dtee	1 a.m.–6 a.m.	bài	1 p.m.–approx 4 p.m.
		yen	4 p.m.–6 p.m.
cháo	7 a.m.–midday	tÔOm	7 p.m.–midnight

However, the hours between 6 a.m. and 11 a.m. can be expressed in two ways:

midnight	têe-ung keun	midday	têe-ung (wun)
1 a.m.	dtee nèung	1 p.m.	bài mohng
2 a.m.	dtee sǒrng	2 p.m.	bài sǒrng mohng
3 a.m.	dtee sǎhm	3 p.m.	bài sǎhm mohng
4 a.m.	dtee sèe	4 p.m.	bài sèe mohng
5 a.m.	dtee hâh	5 p.m.	hâh mohng yen
6 a.m.	dtee hòk	6 p.m.	hòk mohng yen
7 a.m.	mohng cháo	7 p.m.	tÔOm nèung
8 a.m.	sǒrng mohng cháo	8 p.m.	sǒrng tÔOm
or	bpàirt mohng cháo		
9 a.m.	sǎhm mohng cháo	9 p.m.	sǎhm tÔOm
or	gâo mohng cháo		
10 a.m.	sèe mohng cháo	10 p.m.	sèe tÔOm
or	sip mohng cháo		
11 a.m.	hâh mohng cháo	11 p.m.	hâh tÔOm
or	sip-èt mohng cháo		

Note that **dtee** and **bài** appear before the number; **dtee** and **tÔOm** do not occur with **mohng**.

Half hours

Half past the hour is expressed by adding the word **krêung** (*half*) to the hour time. For the hours from 7 a.m. to 11 a.m., however, the word **cháo** is usually omitted:

2.30 a.m.	dtee sǒrng krêung
8.30 a.m.	sǒrng mohng krêung
10.30 a.m.	sip mohng krêung
3.30 p.m.	bài sǎhm mohng krêung
5.30 p.m.	hâh mohng yen krêung
11.30 p.m.	hâh tÔOm krêung

Minutes past, minutes to the hour

There is no special word for *quarter past* or *quarter to* the hour. Minutes past the hour are expressed as hour time + number + **nah-tee** (*minute*):

11.15 a.m.	hâh mohng sîp-hâh nah-tee
3.10 p.m.	bài sâhm mohng sîp nah-tee
8.15 p.m.	sǒrng tŌOm sîp hâh nah-tee

Minutes to the hour are expressed as èek (*further, more*) + number + **nah-tee** + hour time:

9.45 a.m.	èek sîp-hâh nah-tee sèc mohng cháo
4.40 p.m.	èek yêe-sîp nah-tee hâh mohng yen
11.50 p.m.	èek sîp nah-tee têe-ung keun

24-hour clock

In the 24-hour clock system the word **nah-li-gah** is used for *hours* and half hours are expressed as *30 minutes past*:

20.00	yêe-sîp nah-li-gah
22.30	yêe-sîp-sǒrng nah-li-gah sâhm-sîp nah-tee

Exercises

1 Match up the following times:

(a) èek sîp hâh nah-tee têe-ung wun	(i) 05.30
(b) hâh tŌOm yêe-sîp hâh nah-tee	(ii) 16.10
(c) bài sèc mohng sîp nah-tee	(iii) 11.45
(d) dtee hâh krêung	(iv) 23.25

2 What time is it?

- (a) 09.30
- (b) 14.20
- (c) 17.00
- (d) 21.45

3 How would you ask:

- (a) where to book a ticket for Chiangmai?
- (b) what time the Chiangmai bus leaves?
- (c) how many kilometres Chiangmai is from Bangkok?
- (d) how long the journey takes?
- (e) where to get on the bus?

Reading and writing

You have now covered the principal features of the Thai writing system. This unit gives examples of the most common spelling irregularities and lists miscellaneous diacritics which you are likely to encounter in reading an ordinary passage of Thai.

1 The letter ร

The letter ร is normally pronounced as **n** at the end of a word:

อาหาร	ควร	ผู้จัดการ
ah-hâhn	koo-un	pŏo jùt gahn
food	should	manager

In a number of words, however, it is pronounced **orn**:

นคร	ละคร	พร
na-korn	la-korn	porn
Nakhorn (in place names)	theatre	gift, blessing

In certain words it is not pronounced at all:

จริง	สระ
jing	sà
true	swimming pool

When ร occurs at the beginning of a word, the cluster is pronounced **s**:

ทราบ	ทรง	ทราย
sâhp	song	sai
to know	breast	sand

When -ร occurs at the end of a word or syllable it is pronounced **-un** and **-u** if it is followed by a consonant:

รถบรรทุก	พรรค	กรรม
rót bun-tŌOk	púk	gum
lorry	(political) party	fate, karma

2 'r' in ung-grit

The Thai spelling of *ung-grit* (*English*) uses the rare symbol ฤ to represent the ri sound.

อังกฤษ

ung-grit

English

3 Letters that are not pronounced at the end of a word

When the symbol ์ occurs above a consonant, that consonant is not pronounced. It occurs in words of foreign origin, where the foreign spelling has been retained:

เบอร์	จอห์น	เสาร์	อาทิตย์
ber	jorn	sǎo	ah-tít
<i>number</i>	<i>John</i>	<i>Saturday</i>	<i>Sunday, week</i>

Sometimes it is not only the consonant below the symbol which is not pronounced but also the one immediately preceding it:

จันทร์	ศาสตร์
jun	sàht
<i>Monday, moon</i>	<i>science</i>

In some cases, even though there is no 'consonant killer' (์), the final consonant is still not pronounced:

บัตร	สมัคร
bùt	sa-mùk
<i>card</i>	<i>to join</i>

And in other cases, a final short vowel is not pronounced:

ชาติ	เหตุ
châht	hàyt
<i>nation</i>	<i>reason</i>

4 Linker syllables

There are a number of words which appear to have two syllables but which are pronounced as three syllables, with a short a vowel in the middle. In such words the final consonant of the first syllable also functions as the initial consonant in the second syllable:

ชนบท	ผลไม้
chon-na-bòt	pǎn-la-mái
<i>countryside</i>	<i>fruit</i>

5 Mismatch between pronunciation and spelling

There are a few common words that in normal conversation are pronounced with a high tone when the written form suggests the tone should be rising:

ไหม	ฉัน	เขา
mái	chún	káo
(question particle)	<i>I</i>	<i>he, she, they</i>

6 Symbols ๗ and ๘

The symbol ๗ you will probably first meet in the word *grOOng-tâyp* – the Thai name for *Bangkok*. It really means 'etc.' and is used to abbreviate the extremely long full name of the capital. The second symbol indicates that the preceding word should be repeated:

กรุงเทพฯ ๗	ช้า ๘
grOOng-tâyp	cháh cháh
<i>Bangkok</i>	<i>slow</i>

How are you progressing?

You have now covered the major features of the Thai writing system and you should find that if you cover up the romanized part of the dialogues and study the Thai script sections you can read every word. At this point, it is worth going back over the earlier units and working through the Thai script dialogues. It will almost certainly be slow work at first; but if you keep re-reading the same dialogues, you will find that your reading speed steadily improves and that your eye begins to skim quickly over letters without having to pause to think carefully about each one. The reading speed you develop on familiar passages will gradually transfer itself to new, unseen materials.

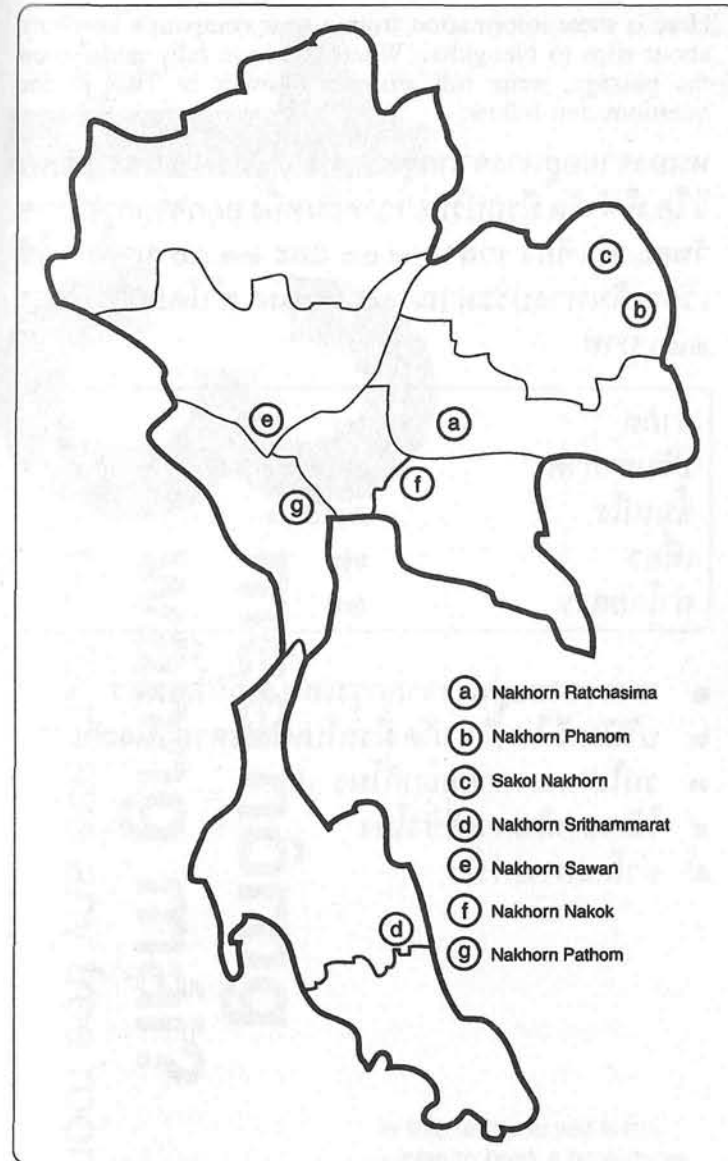
Reading practice

- ▶ 1 Here are some words from earlier lessons with the 'killer' symbol over one of the letters. Some of these words are recognizably borrowed from English, while others come from Sanskrit, the classical language of India.

ไปสการ์ด	แสดมบี	เบียร์สิงห์
ปีเตอร์	เก็บสตางค์	ไปรษณีย์
เบอร์โทรศัพท์	ชอยเกษมสันต์	

- 2 A number of provinces include the word **na-korn** in their name. **na-korn** comes from Sanskrit and means *city*. Match the Thai script spelling with the normal romanization of these place names:

- | | |
|---------------------|--------------------------|
| (i) นครปฐม | (a) Nakhorn Ratchasima |
| (ii) นครนายก | (b) Nakhorn Phanom |
| (iii) นครสวรรค์ | (c) Sakol Nakhorn |
| (iv) นครราชสีมา | (d) Nakhorn Srithammarat |
| (v) นครพนม | (e) Nakhorn Sawan |
| (vi) สกลนคร | (f) Nakhorn Nayok |
| (vii) นครศรีธรรมราช | (g) Nakhorn Pathom |



3 Here is some information from a tour company's brochure about trips to Nongkhai. When you have fully understood the passage, write full sentence answers in Thai to the questions that follow.

หนองคายอยู่ห่างจากกรุงเทพฯ ๖๑๔ กิโลเมตร บริษัท วีไอพี จำกัด มีรถปรับอากาศชั้นหนึ่ง ออกจากกรุงเทพฯ วันละ ๒ เที่ยว เวลา ๐๘.๐๐ และ ๒๑.๓๐ นาฬิกา ใช้เวลาเดินทางประมาณ ๑๐ ชั่วโมง ค่าโดยสารคนละ ๓๘๐ บาท

จำกัด	Ltd
ปรับอากาศ	air conditioned
ชั้นหนึ่ง	first class
เที่ยว	trip
ค่าโดยสาร	fare

- ๑ หนองคายอยู่ห่างจากกรุงเทพฯ ๖ กิโลเมตร
- ๒ บริษัท วีไอพี จำกัด มีรถไปหนองคายวันละกี่เที่ยว
- ๓ รถไปหนองคายออกกี่โมง
- ๔ ใช้เวลาเดินทางกี่ชั่วโมง
- ๕ ค่าโดยสารเท่าไร

13

mee hǎrng
wâhng mǎi?
do you have any free rooms?
มีห้องว่างไหม

- In this unit you will learn
- how to book a hotel room
 - ... réu bplào? questions
 - days of the week
 - another use of hǎi
 - verb + wái

▶ Dialogues

Peter and Sue have arrived at a small hotel in the provincial capital of Nakhorn Phanom.

- | | | |
|--------------|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Peter | มีห้องว่างไหมครับ | mee hòrng wáhnng máí krúp? |
| Clerk | มีครับ | mee krúp. |
| | จะพักอยู่กี่วัน | ja púk yòo gèe wun? |
| Peter | ยังไม่แน่ครับ | yung mái nâir krúp. |
| | อาจจะอยู่จนถึง | àht ja yòo jon tǔng |
| | วันเสาร์ หรือวันอาทิตย์ | wun sǎo réu wun ah-tít. |
| | ห้องติดแอร์หรือเปล่า | hòrng dtít air réu bplào? |
| Clerk | ติดครับ | dtít krúp. |
| Peter | ค่าห้องวันละเท่าไรครับ | kâh hòrng wun la tào-rài krúp? |
| Clerk | วันละห้าร้อยบาทครับ | wun la hàh rói bǎht krúp. |
| | ถ้าอยู่อาทิตย์หนึ่ง | tâh yòo ah-tít nèung |
| | ก็จะลดให้สิบเปอร์เซ็นต์ | gòr ja lót hàì sip bper sen. |
| Peter | ขอดูห้องก่อนได้ไหม | kòr doo hòrng gòrn dâi máí? |
| Clerk | ได้ครับ เชิญทางนี้ครับ | dâi krúp. Chern tahng nêe krúp. |
| Peter | มุงลวดมันเสียครับ | mÓOng lôo-ut mun sǎe-a krúp. |
| | ช่วยแก้ไขให้หน่อยได้ไหม | chóo-ay gâir hàì nòy dâi máí? |
| Clerk | ได้ครับ เติยวจะซ่อมให้ | dâi krúp. tǎe-o ja sòrm hàì. |
| Peter | ช่วยฉีดยากันยุง | chóo-ay chéet yah gun yOOng |
| | ให้ด้วยได้ไหม | hâi dōo-ay dâi máí? |

púk	to stay	พัก
nâir	to be certain	แน่
àht (ja)	may	อาจ(จะ)
jon tǔng	until	จนถึง
wun sǎo	Saturday	วันเสาร์
wun ah-tít	Sunday	วันอาทิตย์

... réu bplào?

... or not?

... หรือเปล่า

dtít air	to be air conditioned	ติดแอร์
(wun) la	per (day)	(วัน)ละ
ah-tít	week	อาทิตย์
hâi	for	ให้
bper sen	per cent	เปอร์เซ็นต์
mÓOng lôo-ut	mosquito screen	มุงลวด
sǎe-a	to be broken	เสีย
gâir	to fix, repair, mend	แก้
sòrm	to repair, mend	ซ่อม
chéet	to spray	ฉีด
yah gun yOOng	mosquito repellent	ยากันยุง

▶ Peter and Sue have agreed to take the room and are now going out for a meal.

- | | | |
|--------------|--------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Clerk | ไปไหนครับ | bpai nâi krúp? |
| Peter | ไปทานข้าว | bpai tahn kǎo. |
| | ขอโทษครับ | kòr-tòht krúp, |
| | ขอฝากของไว้ | kòr fâhk kòrng wái |
| | ที่นี้ได้ไหม | têe-nêe dâi máí? |
| Clerk | ของอะไรครับ | kòrng a-rai krúp? |
| Peter | กล้องถ่ายรูปและ | glòrng tàì rôop láir |
| | กล้องถ่ายวิดีโอ | glòrng tàì wee-dee-oh. |
| Clerk | ได้ครับ ฝากไว้ | dâi krúp. fâhk wái |
| | ที่นี้ปลอดภัย ผมจะ | têe-nêe bplòrt-pai. pòm ja |
| | เก็บไว้ให้ในตู้เซฟ | gèp wái hàì nai dtóo sáyf. |
| Peter | ขอบคุณมากครับ | kòrp-kOOn mâhk krúp. |
| | ขอฝากกุญแจห้องด้วย | kòr fâhk gOOng-jair hòrng dōo-ay. |

fàhk	to deposit	ฝาก
kōrng	things	ของ
glōrng tài rôop	camera	กล้องถ่ายรูป
glōrng tài wee-dee-oh	video camera	กล้องถ่ายวีดีโอ
bplòrt-pai	safe (adj)	ปลอดภัย
gèp wái	to keep	เก็บไว้
dtôo sáyf	safe (n)	ตู้เซฟ
gOO-n-jair	key	กุญแจ

- 1 How long are Peter and Sue thinking of staying at the hotel?
- 2 Do they want an air-conditioned room or a room with a fan?
- 3 How much is the room per night?
- 4 What inducement does the clerk offer the couple to stay longer?
- 5 What valuables do they want to leave in the hotel safe?

i If you are staying in a large hotel in Bangkok you will find that most of the staff speak English. Since their English will be considerably better than your Thai at this stage, it is more appropriate for you to stick to English when speaking to them. However, in cheaper hotels and guest houses, especially in provincial areas, you may find it necessary to use Thai to book your room.

Hotel rooms will either be air conditioned or have a ceiling fan (**pút lom**). A room with a double bed is confusingly described as a 'single room' (**hōrng dèe-o**) while a 'double room' (**hōrng kôo**) has two single beds. Rooms in modern hotels will include a western-style toilet, shower and wash basin, although in provincial areas you may find a Thai-style toilet and a large earthenware water jar, with a small bowl for scooping up the water and pouring over yourself. If your room has a water jar, you will probably find mosquitoes congregating there and it is well worth being equipped with your own insecticide (**yah gun yOOng**). And while on the subject of mosquitoes (**yOOng**), check that the mosquito screens (**mOOng lóo-ut**) on the windows are in good condition and, if not, insist on changing the room.

The Thai word for hotel (**rohng raim**), is also a euphemism for brothel and many of the cheaper hotels that are not brothels are used primarily for illicit liaisons. If you find you get odd looks when you arrive alone and try to book in for a week, you may be at the wrong kind of establishment.

▶ Key phrases and expressions

How to:

- 1 ask if there are any free rooms
mee hōrng wāhng mái? มีห้องว่างไหม
- 2 say you will stay until Saturday
ja yòo jon tēung wun sǎo จะอยู่จนถึงวันเสาร์
hōrng dtit air réu bplào? ห้องติดแอร์หรือเปล่า
- 3 ask what the daily rate is
kâh hōrng wun la tào-rài? ค่าห้องวันละเท่าไร
- 4 ask to see the room
kǒr doo hōrng gòrn dái mái? ขอดูห้องก่อนได้ไหม
- 5 say X is broken and ask for it to be fixed
X sēc-a X เสีย
chôo-ay gâir hâi nòy dái mái? ช่วยแก้ไขให้หน่อยได้ไหม
- 6 ask whether the room is air conditioned
hōrng dtit air réu bplào? ห้องติดแอร์หรือเปล่า
- 7 ask to leave something
kǒr fàhk kōrng wái xee-nêe dái mái? ขอฝากของไว้ที่นี้ได้ไหม

Language notes

▶ 1 Days of the week

wun jun	Monday	วันจันทร์
wun ung-kahn	Tuesday	วันอังคาร
wun pOOt	Wednesday	วันพุธ
wun pa-réu-hùt	Thursday	วันพฤหัสบดี
wun sOOk	Friday	วันศุกร์
wun sǎo	Saturday	วันเสาร์
wun ah-tít	Sunday	วันอาทิตย์

The word *wun* (*day*) usually prefaces the name of the day. When talking about the day on which something happens, Thai does not use a preposition corresponding to English *on*:

wun jun pǒm bpai tum ngahn.	On Monday I'm going to work.
káo ja glùp mah wun sǎo.	He's coming back on Saturday.

2 'Air conditioned'

The English word *air* is frequently used to mean *air conditioned*, in expressions like *dtít air* (*air conditioned*), *hǒng air* (*air-conditioned room*), *rót air* (*air-conditioned bus*). The more formal Thai word for *air conditioned* is *bprùp ah-gàht* (literally, *adjust air*), while an air conditioner is *krêu-ung* (*machine*) *bprùp ah-gàht*.

3 ... réu bplào? questions

... *réu bplào?* literally means ... *or not?* although the English translation makes this question form sound rather more abrupt than it is in Thai. There is nothing brusque about ... *réu bplào?* questions; they simply require a clear *yes* or *no* answer:

bpai réu bplào?	Are you going (or not)?
hǒng dtít air réu bplào?	Does the room have air conditioning (or not)?

Yes/no answers are formed as follows:

(a) if the question refers to the present or future:

Yes: verb
No: (bplào) + *mái* + verb

bpai réu bplào?	Is he going (or not)?
- bpai/(bplào) <i>mái</i> bpai.	- Yes/no.
a-ròy réu bplào?	Is it tasty (or not)?
- a-ròy/(bplào) <i>mái</i> a-ròy.	- Yes/no.

(b) if the question refers to the past, action verbs such as *to go*, *to eat*, *to study* etc. behave differently to stative verbs such as *to be expensive*, *to be bored*, *to be tasty* and so on:

Yes: Action verb + *láir-o*
Stative verb (+ *krúp/ká*)
No: (bplào) + *mái dái* + action verb
(bplào) + *mái* + stative verb

káo toh mah réu bplào?
- toh mah láir-o/(bplào)
mái dái toh mah. Did he phone (or not)?
- Yes/no.

pairng réu bplào?
- pairng/(bplào) *mái pairng.* Was it expensive (or not)?
- Yes/no.

4 hâi

You met the word *hâi* in unit 9 as a causative verb meaning *to get someone to do something*:

hâi kOOn cha-ní-dah sùng dee gwàh.	It's better if I let Khun Chanida order.
chún hâi káo toh mah mài.	I got him to ring back.

Another important use of *hâi* is to indicate the beneficiary of an action, when it can be translated as *for*; this usage often confuses the learner, because in spoken Thai the beneficiary is normally understood from the context and therefore omitted. In this unit you will find several examples of *hâi* meaning *for*. Notice that the pronoun, given in brackets in the example, is commonly omitted in speech:

ja lót hâi (kOOn) síp bper sen. chôo-ay gâir hâi (pǒm) nòy dái mái? dêe-o ja sôm hâi (kOOn).	I'll reduce by 10% for you. Please repair it for me. In a moment I'll repair it for you.
chôo-ay chèt yah gun yOOng hâi (pǒm) dōo-ay dái mái? pǒm ja gèp wái hâi (kOOn) nai dtōo sáyf.	Please spray mosquito repellant for me. I'll keep it in the safe for you.

5 Polite requests: asking someone to do something (2)

In unit 6 you met the pattern *chôo-ay* + verb + *nòy* (+ *dái mái?*) used when asking somebody to do something for you:

chôo-ay pòt dung dung nòy dái mái?	Please speak up.
chôo-ay also occurs commonly with the particle <i>dōo-ay</i> in polite requests, in the basic pattern <i>chôo-ay</i> + verb + <i>dōo-ay</i> ; this can optionally be expanded by the addition of <i>nòy</i> and/or <i>dái mái?</i> :	
chôo-ay bòrk káo dōo-ay.	Please tell him.
chôo-ay bòrk káo nòy dōo-ay.	Could you tell him, please?
chôo-ay bòrk káo nòy dōo-ay dái mái?	Could you tell him, please?

6 Verb + wái

The word *wái* occurs after verbs of action to indicate that the action is being done for future use or reference; it occurs commonly with the verbs *gèp* (to keep) and *fàhk* (to deposit):

kǒr fàhk kǒrng wái tēe-nēe Can I leave my things here?
dài mái?

pǒm ja gèp wái hâi nai I'll keep it in the safe for you.
dtôo sáyf.

káo jorng dtôo-a wái láir-o. He has already booked his ticket.

7 tum-mai lâ?

When Thais ask *why?* in response to a statement, they frequently add the particle *lâ* after *tum-mai*, as a way of pressing for an explanation; in spoken Thai *lâ* is often reduced to *â*:

prŌng nēe chún mái bpai. I'm not going tomorrow.
 – *tum-mai lâ?* Why?

Exercises

1 Use the pattern *chôo-ay + verb + hâi + nòy + dài mái?* to ask Khun Somchai to do you the following favours:

- park the car for you.
- buy some cigarettes for you.
- order a plate of chicken fried rice for you.
- book the train ticket for you.

2 In the last exercise there was no need to use the pronoun *pǒm/chún* after *hâi* because it was clear that you were asking Khun Somchai to do something for you. Now ask Khun Somchai to do the same favours for Khun Malee.

Example:

- park the car for Khun Malee.
chôo-ay jòrt rót hâi kŌOn mah-lee nòy dài mái?
- buy some cigarettes for Khun Malee.
- order a plate of chicken fried rice for Khun Malee.
- book the train ticket for Khun Malee.

3 Use the pattern *bplào, mái dài + verb*, to signal a firm *no* to the following questions asking whether you did something:

- bpai bâhn kŌOn sǎm-chai réu bplào?*
- sùng kâo pùt réu bplào?*
- séu bee-a réu bplào?*
- bòrk kŌOn mah-lee réu bplào?*

4 Use the pattern *bplào krúp (kâ), mái + verb*, to signal a firm *no* to the following questions:

- pairng réu bplào?*
- bèu-a réu bplào?*
- pèt réu bplào?*
- glai réu bplào?*

5 How would you ask to leave the following articles in the hotel safe?

- keys
- camera
- mobile phone
- aeroplane (*krêu-ung bin*) ticket

Reading practice

1 The clerk at the hotel where Peter and Sue are staying asks whether they have visited the famous temple of Wat That Phanom.

Clerk ไปเที่ยววัดธาตุนมหรือยังครับ

Sue ที่ไหนคะ

Clerk วัดธาตุนมครับ

Sue ยังคะ เราอยากจะไปพรุ่งนี้ แต่ไม่ทราบว่า
 จะไปอย่างไร

Clerk ไปกับทัวร์ได้ครับ มีรถแอร์ไปทุกเช้ากลับเย็น

Sue หรือคะ ค่าทัวร์เท่าไรคะ

Clerk คนละสี่ร้อยเจ็ดสิบบาทครับ

Sue รถออกกี่โมงคะ

Clerk แปดโมงเช้า ออกจากหน้าโรงแรมนี้เอง
 แล้วกลับห้าโมงเย็น

Sue แล้วจองตัวที่ไหน

Clerk ผมจองให้ก็ได้ ไปหรือเปล่าครับ

Sue เตียว คิดดูก่อนคะ

wút tâht pa-nom	Wat That Phanom	วัดธาตุพนม
rót air	air-conditioned bus	รถแอร์
... nêe eng	this very ...	นี่เอง
kít doo	to think about, consider	คิดดู

- (a) How does the clerk suggest they get to Wat That Phanom?
 (b) How much will it cost?
 (c) What time will they leave and return?
 (d) What does the clerk offer to do for them?
 (e) What decision does Sue make?

▶ 2 Once at Wat That Phanom Sue asks a Thai about taking photographs. What message does the official ask the Thai to convey to Sue?

Sue ขอโทษค่ะ ที่นี่ห้ามถ่ายรูปหรือเปล่านั้น
 Thai คิดว่าไม่ห้ามครับ แต่จะไปถามเจ้าหน้าที่ให้
 เดี่ยว.... ขอโทษครับ ที่นี่ถ่ายรูปได้ใช่ไหม
 Official ที่นี่ได้ครับ แต่ข้างในห้ามถ่าย ช่วยบอกผ
 รั้งว่าต้องถอดรองเท้าก่อนเข้าข้างในด้วย

hâhm	to forbid	ห้าม
tài rôop	to take a photograph	ถ่ายรูป
tâhm	to ask	ถาม
jâo nâh-têe	official	เจ้าหน้าที่
tòrt	to take off	ถอด
rorng táo	shoes	รองเท้า

3 Match the prohibition notices with the correct translation.

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------------------|
| (a) ห้ามถ่ายรูป | (i) No parking |
| (b) ห้ามจอดรถ | (ii) Sale prohibited |
| (c) ห้ามสูบบุหรี่ | (iii) No entry |
| (d) ห้ามเข้า | (iv) No smoking |
| (e) ห้ามขาย | (v) Photography forbidden |

▶ 4 On the journey to Nakhorn Phanom the overnight coach stopped at a restaurant/coach park. This is the announcement the courier made:

ท่านผู้โดยสารคะ
 เรามาถึงนครราชสีมาเรียบร้อยแล้วค่ะ
 แล้วเราจะหยุดพักกินข้าวต้ม สักครึ่งชั่วโมง
 เวลานี้ เที่ยงคืนครึ่งนะคะ
 รถจะออกใหม่เวลาตีหนึ่งตรงนะคะ
 ท่านผู้โดยสารช่วยกลับมาที่รถก่อนเวลานั้นนะคะ
 เวลาลงรถแล้วช่วยเอาตัวรถไปด้วย
 อย่าลืมนะคะ เพราะว่าต้องเอาไปแสดงในร้านอาหาร
 ไม่มีตัวติดตัว ก็ต้องเสียค่าอาหารเองนะคะ

tûn	you (polite)	ท่าน
pôo-doy-ee sâhn	passenger	ผู้โดยสาร
tûn pôo-doy-ee sâhn	'ladies and gentlemen'	ท่านผู้โดยสาร
mah tēung	to reach	มาถึง
na-korn rāht-cha-	Nakhorn	นครราชสีมา
sēe-mah	Ratchasima	
rēe-up rōy	safely	เรียบร้อยแล้ว
yòOt	to stop	หยุด
kāo dtôm	rice porridge	ข้าวต้ม
krēung chōo-a mohng	half an hour	ครึ่งชั่วโมง
dtrong	straight, exact	ตรง
long	to get off (a bus)	ลง
ao + (noun +) bpai	to take	เอา...ไป
leum	to forget	ลืม
sa-dairng	to show	แสดง

ráhn ah-hǎhn	<i>restaurant</i>	ร้านอาหาร
dtoo-a	<i>body</i>	ตัว
dtit dtoo-a	<i>on you, with you</i>	ติดตัว
kâh	<i>cost</i>	ค่า
eng	<i>self</i>	เอง

- (a) What time did the bus reach Nakhorn Ratchasima?
 (b) What was the purpose of the stop?
 (c) What time was the bus going to depart?
 (d) What did the courier remind the passengers to take with them?
 (e) What would happen if they forgot?

14

yàhk ja yòo
bâhn têe mee sǒo-un
 I want to live in a house where
 there is a garden
 อยากจะอยู่บ้านที่มีสวน

In this unit you will learn

- how to talk about things you are about to do
- relative clauses
- dates, months and seasons
- the verb to give
- negative questions

Dialogues

Sue is telling Malee about her plans for moving house.

- Sue** เรากำลังจะย้ายบ้านค่ะ rao gum-lung ja yái bàhn kâ.
Malee หรือ อพาร์ทเมนต์ ที่อยู่ตอนนี้ไม่ดีหรือ lër? a-páht-mén t'ee yòo dtorn née mâi dee lër?
Sue ก็... ดีซี gôr... dee see.
 แต่ว่าเราอยากจะอยู่ บ้านที่มีสวน dtàir wâh rao yàhk ja yòo bàhn tée mee sǎo-un.
Malee แล้วไม่กลัวขโมยหรือ láir-o mâi gloo-a ka-moy lër?
Sue ก็... กลัวเหมือนกัน gôr... gloo-a mǎu-un gun.
Malee จะย้ายเมื่อไรคะ ja yái mǎu-rài ká?
Sue วันที่ ๑๕ เดือนหน้า wun tée sip hâh deu-un nâh.
Malee บ้านเป็นอย่างไร bàhn bpen yung-ngai?
Sue สวยมากค่ะ sǎo-ay mâhk kâ.
 เป็นบ้านไม้แบบไทย bpen bàhn mâi bàirp tai
 มีสองชั้นแล้วมี mee sǎrng chún láir-o mee
 บริเวณบ้านกว้างใหญ่ bor-ri-wayn bàhn gwâhng yài.
 ข้างบนมีห้องนอน ๓ kúng bon mee hôrng norn sâhm
 ห้อง แล้วห้องน้ำ hôrng láir-o hôrng nâhm
 ห้องส้วม ข้างล่างมี hôrng sǎo-um. kúng lâhng mee
 ห้องครัวห้องรับแขก hôrng kroo-a hôrng rúp kàirk
 แล้วก็ห้องน้ำ láir-o gôr hôrng nâhm.

gum-lung ja	to be about to ...	กำลังจะ...
a-páht-mén	apartment	อพาร์ทเมนต์
tée	which, where, who	ที่
see	(mood particle)	ซี
dtàir wâh	but	แต่
sǎo-un	garden	สวน
ka-moy	burglar	ขโมย

wun tée sip hâh	the 15th	วันที่ ๑๕
deu-un	month	เดือน
nâh	next	หน้า
mâi	wood	ไม้
bàirp	style	แบบ
bàirp tai	Thai style	แบบไทย
chún	storey, floor	ชั้น
bor-ri-wayn bàhn	house compound	บริเวณบ้าน
gwâhng	wide	กว้าง
hôrng norn	bedroom	ห้องนอน
hôrng sǎo-um	toilet	ห้องส้วม
hôrng kroo-a	kitchen	ห้องครัว
hôrng rúp kàirk	living room	ห้องรับแขก

Malee quizzes Sue a little more about the new house.

- Malee** ค่าเช่าแพงไหม kâh châo pairng mâi?
Sue เดือนละสองหมื่น de-un la sǎrng mǎun
 แต่ต้องให้ค่ามัดจำ dtàir dtǎrng hâi kâh mút-jum
 เขาหกหมื่นด้วย kâo hòk mǎun dǎo-ay.
Malee หน้าฝนน้ำท่วมไหม nâh fǎn nâhm tǎo-um mâi?
Sue อู๊ย... ลืมถาม óo-ee... leum tǎhm.

kâh châo	rent	ค่าเช่า
mǎun	10,000	หมื่น
hâi	to give	ให้
kâh mút-jum	deposit	ค่ามัดจำ
nâh fǎn	rainy season	หน้าฝน
nâhm tǎo-um	to flood	น้ำท่วม
óo-ee ...	(exclamation of surprise)	อู๊ย

- 1 What is wrong with the apartment where Sue lives?
- 2 When does she plan to move?
- 3 What is the new house like?
- 4 How many bedrooms does it have?
- 5 What rooms does it have downstairs?
- 6 What is the monthly rent?
- 7 How much deposit did she have to pay?
- 8 Does the area flood during the rainy season?

Language notes

1 gum-lung ja + verb

The pattern **gum-lung ja + verb** is used to describe actions that are, or were, about to happen:

rao gum-lung ja yái bahn.	<i>We are/were about to move home.</i>
chún gum-lung ja gin kào.	<i>I am/was about to eat.</i>
káo gum-lung ja séu.	<i>He is/was about to buy it.</i>

Be careful not to confuse this pattern with **gum-lung + verb + yòo** (unit 7) used to describe continuous actions.

2 Negative questions

Negative questions (*it's not . . . , then?*) can be formed by the pattern **mái + verb + lěr?**:

a-páht-mén mái dee lěr?	<i>The apartment isn't any good, then?</i>
káo mái mah lěr?	<i>He's not coming, then?</i>
kOOn mái chòrp lěr?	<i>You don't like it, then?</i>

Yes/no answers to negative questions are confusing to English speakers, in that Thais use **krúp/kâ** (*yes*) where English speakers say *no*:

káo mái mah lěr?	<i>He's not coming, then?</i>
- krúp/kâ (káo mái mah).	- <i>No (he's not).</i>
kOOn mái chòrp lěr?	<i>You don't like it then?</i>
- krúp/kâ (mái chòrp).	- <i>No (I don't).</i>

A *yes* answer often involves the verb followed by the particle **see** (unit 7) which indicates a contradiction of the negative question:

a-páht-mén mái dee lěr?	<i>The apartment isn't any good, then?</i>
- gòr . . . dee see.	<i>Well, yes, it is.</i>
kOOn mái chòrp lěr?	<i>You don't like it then?</i>
- chòrp see.	<i>- Yes (I do).</i>

3 Relative pronouns

A single relative pronoun **tée** can mean *where, which, who, when*:

a-páht-mén tée yòo dtorn née . . .	<i>The apartment where you live now . . .</i>
rao yàhk yòo bahn tée mee sòo-un.	<i>We want to live in a house where there is a garden.</i>
rót tée káo séu pairng mähk.	<i>The car which he bought was very expensive.</i>
hòrng tée mái mee air yung wáhg.	<i>The room which is not air conditioned is still free.</i>
pêu-un tée chêu jáirk bpen kon tai.	<i>My friend who is called Jack is Thai.</i>
kon tée bòrk mah-lee mái chái pòm.	<i>The person who told Malee wasn't me.</i>
wun tée chún bpai rórñ mähk.	<i>The day when I went was very hot.</i>
deu-un tée rao yòo náhm tóo-um.	<i>The month when we were there, there were floods.</i>

4 Months

mók-ga-rah-kom	January	มกราคม
gOOm-pah-pun	February	กุมภาพันธ์
mee-nah-kom	March	มีนาคม
may-sáh-yon	April	เมษายน
préut-sa-pah-kom	May	พฤษภาคม
mí-tOO-nah-yon	June	มิถุนายน
ga-rúk-ga-dah-kom	July	กรกฎาคม
sing-häh-kom	August	สิงหาคม
gun-yah-yon	September	กันยายน
dtOO-lah-kom	October	ตุลาคม
préut-sa-jik-gah-yon	November	พฤศจิกายน
tun-wah-kom	December	ธันวาคม

The final syllable is **-kom** for months with 31 days, **-yon** for 30 days and **-pun** for the shortest month, February. In normal speech, the word **deu-un** (*month*) often prefaces the name of the month while the final syllable is omitted. Note that Thai does not use a preposition corresponding to English *in*:

bpai deu-un sǐng-hǎh. *I'm going in August.*
glùp deu-un tun-wah. *He's coming back in December.*

5 Dates and ordinal numbers and years

Ordinal numbers in Thai are formed by adding **têe** in front of the number:

têe nèung *first*
têe sǒrng *second*
têe sǎhm *third*

Dates are expressed using the pattern **wun** + ordinal number + month:

wun têe sǐp tun-wah-kom *10th December*
wun têe yêe-sǐp may-sǎh-yon *20th April*

The year (**bpee**) is normally counted according to the Buddhist era (BE) (**pŏŏt-ta-sùk-ka-ráht** or **por sǒr** (พ.ศ.) for short) which began with the birth of the Buddha, 543 years before the birth of Christ. To convert Thai years to AD (**kor sǒr** (ค.ศ.) for short), you simply subtract 543 years. Thus, 2500 BE is 1957 AD, while 2000 AD is 2543 BE.

6 'To give'

You have already met the word **hâi** in unit 9, where it had the meaning of *causing someone to do something* and in unit 13 where it meant *for*; a third meaning of **hâi** is *to give*. Unlike English, the order of objects with **hâi** is subject + **hâi** + direct object + indirect object:

chún hâi kâh mút-jum *I gave them a deposit of 60,000.*
káo hòk mèun. *(I-give-deposit-they-60,000)*
fairn hâi ngern pòm. *My wife gave me the money.*
(wife-give-money-I)
rao hâi rót káo. *We gave him a car.*
(we-give-car-he)

7 Seasons

There are three seasons in Thailand, the cool season (November to February), the hot season (March to June) and the rainy season (July to October). The formal Thai word for *season* is **reu-doo**, but **nâh** is more commonly used in speech:

nâh nǎo *cool season*
nâh rón *hot season*
nâh fǒn *rainy season*

Exercises

- How would you say you are about to do the following:
 - order food
 - go home
 - go out
 - buy a new car
 - book a train ticket to Chiangmai
- How would you say the following dates:
 - 9th January
 - 19th June
 - 31st August
 - 5th November
 - 3rd April
- Translate the following sentences into English, using the relative pronoun **têe**:
 - The house where I am staying is not very big.
 - The food which we eat is not very spicy.
 - The Thais I know speak English very well.
 - The school where I study is far away.
 - The teacher who teaches Thai comes from Chiangmai.
 - The blouse which I like is too expensive.
 - Where is the book which I gave you?
 - The year (when) I studied Thai there were not many pupils.
 - The day (when) we went to Nakhorn Phanom was not very hot.

Reading practice

- ▶ 1 Noi, a Thai hotel worker, is talking about her work.

น้อยทำงานอยู่ที่นี้เกือบ ๒๐ ปีแล้วค่ะ ทำงานอยู่ที่นี้สบาย ทำความสะอาดห้อง และซักรีดเสื้อผ้า มาทำงานเวลา ๒ โมงเช้าแล้วกลับบ้านบ่าย ๔ โมง แยกที่นี้ส่วนมากเป็นชาวต่างประเทศ ฝรั่งเศสก็มี จีนก็มี ญี่ปุ่นก็มี บางคนก็ใจดีมาก ให้ทิปเป็นร้อยกว่าบาท แต่ตอนนี้เป็นหน้าฝน แยกไม่ค่อยมี งานก็ไม่ค่อยมาก น้อยก็นั่งคุยกับเพื่อนทั้งวัน

เกือบ	almost
สบาย	to be happy, well, comfortable
ทำความสะอาด	cleaning
ซัก	to wash
รีด	to iron
เสื้อผ้า	clothes
แขก	guest
ส่วนมาก	mostly, for the most part
ชาวต่างประเทศ	foreigners
ใจดี	to be kind
ทิป	tip
คุย	to chat
ทั้งวัน	all day

- ▶ 2 Malee and Sue are discussing a visit Sue had made to the seaside.

Malee คุณซู เคยไปเที่ยวชายทะเลที่เมืองไทยหรือยัง
Sue เคยค่ะ เคยไปพัทยาคั้งหนึ่งเมื่อสองสามเดือนก่อน
Malee สนุกไหม
Sue ก็... ไม่ค่อยสนุกเท่าไร มีคนเยอะแยะ ไม่ชอบ ชอบเงียบ ๆ มากกว่า

Malee ถ้าไปชายทะเล ฉันจะไปหัวหินดีกว่า
 เจียบกว่าพัทยาเยอะ นักท่องเที่ยวก็น้อยกว่า
 ไม่อย่างนั้น ก็ไปเที่ยวเกาะเสม็ดสิ
 เช่าบังกาโลก็สนุกดี
Sue บังกาโลเป็นอย่างไรคะ
Malee ส่วนมากมีแต่ห้องนอนกับห้องน้ำเท่านั้น
 แอร์ไม่มี ห้องครัวก็ไม่มี
 แต่อยู่ได้สบาย เพราะแถวนั้นมี
 ร้านอาหารทะเลเยอะ

chai ta-lay	seaside	ชายทะเล
pút-ta-yah	Pattaya	พัทยา
yér-yáir	lots	เยอะแยะ
ta-lay	sea	ทะเล
hǎo-a hǐn	Hua Hin	หัวหิน
ngêe-up	quiet, calm	เจียบ
gòr sa-mèt	Koh (island) Samet	เกาะเสม็ด
bung-ga-loh	bungalow	บังกาโล

- ▶ 3 John is having a few problems with his hotel room.

John ขอเปลี่ยนห้องได้ไหมครับ
Clerk ทำไมล่ะครับ
John เครื่องปรับอากาศมันเสีย
Clerk เดี่ยวจะขึ้นไปดู
John ไม่ต้องครับ
 ห้องน้ำใช้ไม่ได้ด้วย ไม่มีน้ำ
 อยากเปลี่ยนห้องดีกว่า
Clerk เปลี่ยนไม่ได้ครับ
John ทำไมล่ะครับ
Clerk ห้องอื่นไม่มีครับ

bplèe-un	to change	เปลี่ยน
krèu-ung bprùp ah-gàht	air conditioner	เครื่องปรับอากาศ
kèun	to go up	ขึ้น
èun	other	อื่น

4 Lek, a Thai woman, talks about her language problems when she first came to live in England.

เล็กแต่งงานที่กรุงเทพฯ สามี่เป็นคนอังกฤษ
ทำงานอยู่ที่บริษัทใหญ่แห่งหนึ่งแถวถนนสุขุมวิท
เรากลับมาอยู่ที่อังกฤษเมื่อสามปีก่อน
ความจริงเล็กไม่ยอมมาอยู่อังกฤษเลย
เพราะว่าพูดภาษาอังกฤษไม่ค่อยเป็น
เคยเรียนที่โรงเรียน แต่เรียนไม่เก่ง
คนอังกฤษพูด เล็กฟังไม่รู้เรื่องเลย
สามี่ก็ให้เล็กไปเรียนภาษาที่โรงเรียนแถว ๆ บ้าน
ที่โรงเรียนมีนักเรียนทุกชาติ ญี่ปุ่นก็มี จีนก็มี
เยอรมันก็มี อาฟริกาก็มี แล้วก็มีอาหารับด้วย
ฉันต้องไปเรียนอาทิตย์ละ ๔ วัน คือวันจันทร์
วันอังคาร วันพุธแล้วก็วันศุกร์ เรียนวันละ ๒-๓
ชั่วโมงตั้งแต่สามโมงเช้าจนถึงเที่ยง เรียนประมาณ ๖
เดือนแล้ว เล็กก็รู้สึกว่ ภาษาอังกฤษดีขึ้นมากเลย

สามี่	husband
แห่ง	(classifier for companies)
นักเรียน	pupil
เยอรมัน	German
อาฟริกา	Africa(n)
อาหรับ	Arab
ดีขึ้น	to improve

Unit 1

Exercise 1

- (a) pòm (di-chún) chêu ... (b) nahm sa-gOOOn ...
(c) bpen kon ... (d) bpen ... / tum ngahn gùp ...

Exercise 2

- (a) chài krúp (kâ) (b) nahm sa-gOOOn Green krúp (kâ)
(c) mâi chài krúp (kâ) (d) bpen kon ung-grít krúp (kâ)
(e) chài krúp (kâ) (f) bpen núk tOO-rá-gít krúp (kâ)

Exercise 3

- (a)-(ii) (b)-(iv) (c)-(i) (d)-(iii)

Exercise 4

- 2 káo chêu John. nahm sa-gOOOn Stevens. bpen kon a-may-ri-gun. mah jàhk new yórk. bpen núk sèuk-sáh
3 káo chêu Makoto. nahm sa-gOOOn Iwasaki. bpen kon yêe-bpOOOn. mah jàhk dtóh-gee-o. bpen núk tOO-rá-gít
4 káo chêu Paula. nahm sa-gOOOn Besson. bpen kon fa-rùng-sàyt. mah jàhk bpah-rít. bpen ah-jahn

Exercise 5

- (a) bpen - mâi chài (b) mâi chài - bpen
(c) mâi chài - bpen (d) bpen - mâi chài

Exercise 6

- (a) kǒr-tôht krúp (kâ) kOOOn chêu a-rai?
 (b) káo chêu sǒm-chai châi mái?
 (c) káo nahm sa-gOOOn a-rai?
 (d) káo bpen kon châht a-rai?
 (e) káo bpen kon tai châi mái?
 (f) káo bpen ah-jahn châi mái?
 (g) káo mái châi kon tai; bpen kon yêe-bpOOOn
 (h) káo mái châi kon ung-grüt; bpen kon fa-rùng-sàyt

Reading practice**2 Words**

mah	nah	nahm	nahn	nahng	ngahn
num	rum	lum	wun	yung	mun
lung	rung	ror	rorng	mornng	norn
rai	nai	yai	lao	yao	rao

3 Sentences

yahm	yahm lao	yahm lao mah
nai	nai ror	nai ror nahn
nahng	nahng lah	nahng lah ngahn
yai	yai rum	yai rum nahn

4 Numbers

1	236-4890	2	580-7359	3	225-7381
4	693-2145	5	371-9548		

Unit 2**Exercise 1**

- (b) pairng bpai nøy krúp (kâ) hâh-síp bâht dâi mái?
 (c) pairng bpai nøy krúp (kâ) hòk-síp bâht dâi mái?
 (d) pairng bpai nøy krúp (kâ) yêe-síp bâht dâi mái?
 (e) pairng bpai nøy krúp (kâ) sǎhm-síp bâht dâi mái?

Exercise 2

- (a) nêe tâo-rài krúp (kâ)?
 (b) pairng bpai nøy
 (c) lôt nøy dâi mái krúp (ká)?
 (d) hâh-síp bâht dâi mái krúp (ká)?
 (e) sêe dairng mái sǒo-ay
 (f) sêe kêe-o mee mái?

Exercise 3

- (a) sùp-bpa-rót bai la tâo-rài? (b) sôm loh la tâo-rài?
 (c) glôo-ay wêe la tâo-rài? (d) ma-la-gor bai la tâo-rài?
 (e) ma-môo-ung bai la tâo-rài? (f) nóy-nàh loh la tâo-rài?
 (g) dtairng moh bai la tâo-rài?

Exercise 4

- (a) a-ròy mái?/ a-ròy châi mái?
 (b) pairng mái?/ pairng châi mái?
 (c) sǒo-ay mái?/ sǒo-ay châi mái?
 (d) sêe dairng mee mái?/ sêe dairng mee châi mái?

Exercise 5

- (a) nêe (rêe-uk wâh) a-rai? (b) a-rai ná?
 (c) ma-môo-ung châi mái krúp? (d) bai la tâo-rài?
 (e) lôt nøy dâi mái?

Reading practice**2 Words**

gin	gun	jai	doo	dee
dtah	dtee	bin	bai	bpai
bpee	mohng	bpoo	rohng	yOOng
un	mee	gun	lorng	loh

3 Sentences

bin mah	bin bpai bin mah	yOOng bin bpai bin mah
mah doo	yin dee mah doo	lOOng yin dee mah doo
bpoo dum	mee bpoo dum	nai nah mee bpoo dum
ngoo dtai	dtee ngoo dtai	yahm lao dtee ngoo dtai
nahng ngahm	doo nahng ngahm	ror doo nahng ngahm
dung	dung	dung

4 Dates

(i)-(c) (ii)-(d) (iii)-(a) (iv)-(e) (v)-(b)

Unit 3

Exercise 1

- (a) bpai sa-yăhm sa-kwair mái?
 (b) bpai rohng-rairm ree-noh mái?
 (c) bpai ta-nôn sOO-kŎOm-wít soy săhm-síp gâo mái?
 (d) bpai sa-năhm bin dorn meu-ung mái?

Exercise 2

- (a) tểung sề-yâirk láir-o lée-o kwăh
 (b) lée-o sái láir-o kâo soy
 (c) lée-o kwăh láir-o jòrt tề-nôhn
 (d) bpai sŎOt soy láir-o jòrt glâi glâi rôt sề dairng

Exercise 3

(a)-(v)-(B) (b)-(iii)-(E) (c)-(iv)-(A) (d)-(i)-(C) (e)-(ii)-(D)

Exercise 4

- (a) bpai ta-nôn sOO-kŎOm-wít soy hâh-síp săhm mái?
 (b) kâo krúp. bpai sŎOt soy (c) châi krúp. bpai tâo-rài?
 (d) pairng bpai nỳ krúp (e) jêt-síp bằht dâi mái?

Exercise 5

- (a) jòrt glâi glâi sề-yâirk krúp (kâ)
 (b) bpai sŎOt soy krúp (kâ)
 (c) tểung sề-yâirk láir-o lée-o sái krúp (kâ)
 (d) jòrt tề-nôhn glâi glâi rôt sề dairng dairng krúp (kâ)

Reading practice

1 Syllables (live syllables marked in bold)

bpai	jòrt	mâhk	gun
dee	ree-noh	dtit	rohng

2 Tones

bềp	nahng	gùt	jŎOt	nút
bpee	dâhp	jahn	jâhk	dtai
lâhp	rao	mêet	rôrp	bpâhk

3 Words

yâhk	mee	nút	gùp	ngahn
yŎOng	gùt	mâhk	jâhk	rềp
ai	norn	yorm	lòok	jòrt

Unit 4

Exercise 1

- (a) kỏr may-noo nỳ
 (b) kỏr kâo pùt gài săhm jahn
 (c) kỏr bee-a sỉng sỏrng kòo-ut
 (d) kỏr núm kảirng bplào gâir-o nềung
 (e) chềk bin krúp (kâ)

Exercise 2

(a) kỏr doo nỳ (b) kỏr chim nỳ (c) kỏr jòrt rôt tề-nôhn nỳ

Exercise 3

(a) (iii) (b) (i) (c) (ii) (d) (iv)

Exercise 4

- (a) sa-yăhm sa-kwair yòo tề-năi?
 (b) rohng rairm ree-noh yòo tề-năi?
 (c) hỏng năhm yòo tề-năi?
 (d) ta-nôn sOO-kŎOm-wít soy săhm-síp săhm yòo tề-năi?
 (e) kŎOn mah-lee yòo tề-năi?

Exercise 5

- (a) Peter/Sue/Tom yòo kung nai
 (b) Nikki/Eddie/Nuan yòo kung nôrk
 (c) Sue/Tom yòo kung bon
 (d) Peter yòo kung lâhng
 (e) Nikki/Eddie yòo kung nâh
 (f) Nuan yòo kung lũng/kung kâhng

Reading practice

1 Words

chai	chahm	soy	bàht	kum
chôrp	tahng	pah	púk	tum
tÓOk	keun	deung	dtèuk	keu
ker-ee	ler-ee	pairng	dairng	bpàirt
yen	lék	bpen	jèt	gèp
bpèt	gôr	may-noo	kon	long

2 Sentences

bpàirt bpàirt bàht bpàirt bàht pairng bpàirt bàht pairng bpai
 jeen kon jeen bpen kon jeen IOOng bpen kon jeen
 bpai mâhk bpai jèt jahn mâhk bpai gin jèt jahn mâhk bpai

3 Public signs

(i) (a) (ii) (c)

Unit 5

Exercise 1

- (a) tăir-o nêe mee bprai-sa-nee mái?
 (b) tăir-o nêe mee ta-nah-kahn mái?
 (c) tăir-o nêe mee hôrng náhm mái?
 (d) tăir-o nêe mee toh-ra-sùp mái?

Exercise 2

- (a) sòng bpóht-gáht bpai a-may-ri-gah tâo-rài?
 (b) sòng bpai tahng ah-gáht tâo-rài?
 (c) kôr sa-dtairm sîp-sòrng bàht hâh doo-ung
 (d) kôr jòt-măi ah-gáht pàirn nêung
 (e) túng mòt tâo-rài?

Exercise 3

- (a) doo-ung (b) pàirn (c) tôo-ay
 (d) jahn (e) hôrng (f) kon

Exercise 4

- (a) yàhk ja jòrt rót têe-nôhn
 (b) yàhk ja bpai sa-yăhm sa-kwair
 (c) dtôrng-gahn jòt-măi ah-gáht pàirn nêung
 (d) ao kâo pùt

Reading practice

1 Words

kăi	kôr	kùp	chèet	tăhm
tòok	pît	fâhk	sêe	sÓOt
sörn	săo	sùk	sîp	hùk
hăh	lũng	wùt	lăi	nôo

2 Words

kôr-tôht	tăir-o	mee	mái	lěr/rêu
soy	ròrk	bpai	tahng	sùk
sòrng	săhm	nah-tee	mâhk	bpen rai
sîp-sòrng	bàht	tahng	ah-gáht	jòt-măi
a-may-ri-gah	long	jèt-sîp	mòt	

3 Numbers

(i) (f) (ii) (d) (iii) (b) (iv) (e) (v) (a) (vi) (c)

4 Sentences

tai	kon tai	bpen kon tai	IOOng bpen kon tai
dtàhk	jung-wùt	jàhk jung-wùt	mah jàhk jung-wùt
	dtàhk	dtàhk	dtàhk
mâhk	lăhn mâhk	mee lăhn mâhk	yai mee lăhn mâhk
kon	sîp kon	lôok sîp kon	mee lôok sîp kon
kon	săhm kon	săo săhm kon	lôok săo săhm kon

Unit 6

Exercise 1

- (a) kôr pòot gùp kOOn mah-lee nòy dâi mái?
 (b) chòo-ay pòot dung dung nòy dâi mái?
 (c) ror sùk kròo ná krúp (ká)
 (d) krai pòot krúp (ká)
 (e) kOOn mah-lee ja glùp mah mêu-rài?

Exercise 2

- (a) pǒm/chún kít wâh ja òrk bpai kung nôrk
 (b) pǒm/chún kít wâh ja bpai bprai-sa-nee dtorn cháo
 (c) pǒm/chún kít wâh ja bpai bâhn kOOn sǒm-chai dtorn bài
 (d) pǒm/chún kít wâh ja glùp mah dtorn yen

Exercise 3

- (a) kOOn sǒm-chai bòrk wâh (káo) ja bpai ta-nah-kahn dtorn cháo
 (b) kOOn sǒm-chai bòrk wâh (káo) ja bpai bâhn pêu-un dtorn bài
 (c) kOOn sǒm-chai bòrk wâh (káo) ja jòrt rót tée soy sǎhm-síp sǎhm
 (d) kOOn sǒm-chai bòrk wâh (káo) ja glùp bâhn dtorn yen

Exercise 4

- (a) kOOn sǒm-chai ja glùp mêu-rài?
 (b) kOOn sǒm-chai ja yòo mêu-rài?
 (c) kOOn sǒm-chai ja róa mêu-rài?
 (d) kOOn sǒm-chai ja toh mah mêu-rài?
 (e) kOOn sǒm-chai ja bòrk pǒm/chún mêu-rài?
 (f) kOOn sǒm-chai ja toh mah bòrk pǒm/chún mêu-rài?

Reading practice

Yupha is Thai. She comes from Loei. Damrong is Yupha's husband. Damrong comes from Tak. Yupha and Damrong have five children. They have two sons and three daughters

Unit 7**Exercise 1**

- (a) bpen nít-nòy (b) (mâi) nahn
 (c) bpen nít-nòy (d) bpen nít-nòy
 (e) (mâi) yâhk krúp. prór wâh mee sée-ung sǒng sée-ung dtùm.

Exercise 2

- (a) ker-ee bpai (têe-o) ung-grít mái?
 (b) ker-ee ree-un pah-sǎh ung-grít mái?
 (c) ker-ee gin fish and chips mái?
 (d) ker-ee bpai (têe-o) poo-gèt mái?
 (e) ker-ee tum ngahn tée grOOngr-tâyph mái?

Exercise 3

- (a) mâi kôy pairng tâo-rài (b) mâi kôy glai tâo-rài
 (c) mâi kôy a-ròy tâo-rài (d) mâi kôy dee tâo-rài
 (e) mâi kôy chùt tâo-rài (f) mâi kôy yâhk tâo-rài

Exercise 4

- (a) pairng gwàh (b) glai gwàh (c) a-ròy gwàh
 (d) dee gwàh (e) chùt gwàh (f) yâhk gwàh

Exercise 5

- (a) yâhk gwàh (b) ngái gwàh
 (c) ngái gwàh (d) yâhk gwàh

Reading practice**1 Words**

mâi	nêe	pôr	mâir	nèung	kôo
yòo	gài	dtàir	sùng	nòy	dtòr
chêu	châi	pêe	têe	àhn	wâh

2 Phrases

châi mái?	mâi châi	nêe tâo-rài?	yêe-síp bàht
pairng bpai nòy	jòrt tée-nêe	mâi pairng ròrk	yòo tée-nòhn
mâi bpen rai	yòo tée-nǎi?	àhn mâi yâhk	kít wâh mâi mah

3 Dialogue

- Peter** How much is it to Soi 33?
Tuk-tuk Soi 33? That'll be 80 baht.
Peter 80 baht? That's a bit too expensive.
Tuk-tuk No it isn't. The traffic is very congested.

Unit 8**Exercise 1**

- (a) jòrt rót (láir-o) réu yung? (b) gin kâo (láir-o) réu yung?
 (c) pòt gúp kOOn sǒm-chai (láir-o) réu yung?
 (d) bòrk kOOn mah-lee (láir-o) réu yung?
 (e) òrk bpai kung nôrk (láir-o) réu yung?

Exercise 2

- (a) mee pêe nórng gèe kon? (b) mee pêe sǎo gèe kon?
 (c) mee nórng chai gèe kon? (d) mee lôok gèe kon?
 (e) mee lôok chai gèe kon? (f) mee lôok sǎo gèe kon?

Exercise 3

- (a) sa-bai dee krúp (kâ) (b) bpen nít-nòy krúp (kâ)
 (c) (mâi) nahn krúp (kâ) (d) mâi gèng (ròrk) krúp (kâ)
 (e) kòrp-kOOon krúp (kâ) (f) (mâi) mee krúp (kâ)
 (g) dtàirng láir-o krúp (kâ)/ yung krúp (kâ)

Exercise 4

- (a) gin gah-fair gèe tào-ay? (b) gin kào pùt gOOng gèe jahn?
 (c) gin bee-a gèe kòo-ut? (d) ao sa-dtairm gèe doo-ung?
 (e) gin ma-mòo-ung gèe bai?

Exercise 5

- (a) kOOon chêu a-rai ká?
 (b) ah-yOO tào-rài ká?
 (c) yòo meu-ung tai nahn mái ká?
 (d) kǒr-tòht kâ dtàirng ngahn láir-o réu yung?
 (e) mee lôok láir-o réu yung ká?
 (f) (lòok) ah-yOO tào-rài ká?

Reading practice**1 Words**

dtòrng	túng	bâhn	hâi	róo
sòm	née	tâh	gâo	náhm
láir-o	gOOng	rórñ	hòrng	séu
káo	nóhn	gâir-o	nâh	dâi

2 Phrases

dâi mái?	mâi dâi	sáhm-síp hâh
róo-jùk mái?	gòr láir-o gun	kào pùt gOOng
gâir-o nèung	tâir-o née	sòrng róy bàht

3 Dialogue

- Somchai** Could I have two plates of shrimp fried rice and a plate of duck rice?
Waiter There's no duck rice. We have chicken and rice and red pork and rice.
Somchai We'll have red pork rice then and three glasses of orange juice.
Waiter There's no orange juice. We only have Pepsi.

Unit 9**Exercise 1**

- (a) (mâi) bpen (b) (mâi) pèt (c) (mâi) bpen
 (d) (mâi) a-ròy (e) (mâi) sòop

Exercise 2

- (a) mêu-rài gòr dâi (b) a-rai gòr dâi
 (c) krai gòr dâi (d) têu-nâi gòr dâi

Exercise 3

- (a) rao dern bpai mâi dâi. glai gern bpai
 (b) ka-nòm tai mâi a-ròy. wáhn gern bpai
 (c) pòm (chún) mâi ao. pairng gern bpai
 (d) káo mâi chòrp ah-háhn tai. pèt gern bpai
 (e) pòm (chún) pòot pah-sǎh tai mâi dâi. yáhk gern bpai

Exercise 4

- (a) tâh glai bpai gòr mâi dtòrng dern
 (b) tâh mâi a-ròy gòr mâi dtòrng gin
 (c) tâh mâi yáhk bpai gòr mâi dtòrng
 (d) tâh mâi pèt mâhk gòr kít wâh gin dâi

Exercise 5

- (a) hâi kOOon sòm-chai jòrt rót dee gwàh
 (b) hâi kOOon sòm-chai sùng ah-háhn dee gwàh
 (c) hâi kOOon sòm-chai pòot gúp kOOon mah-lee dee gwàh
 (d) hâi kOOon sòm-chai toh-ra-sùp dee gwàh

Reading practice

1 Words

pâhk	pah-săh	yài	yǐng	kOOon	kâh
rao	káo*	ao	kâo	tâo-rài?	tâo-nún
ree-un	kěe-un	lée-o	mêu-a	měu-un	pêu-un
dtoo-a	hồo-a	woo-a	sổo-ay	chôo-ay	dôo-ay
gern	gèrt	chern	dern	jer	ter
ja	ká	kâ	ná	a-rai?	ba-mèc

(* pronounced with a high tone)

2 Phrases

kOOon chêu a-rai ká?
 loh la tâo-rài?
 láir-o lée-o sái
 ao ba-mèc nâhm chahm nèung
 dern bpai sǒng nah-tee tâo-nún
 bpen pêu-un kOOon mah-lee
 rêu-uk wâh náy-nâh
 láir-o kOOon cha-ní-dah lâ krúp
 lôok chai ah-yÓO sâhm kòo-up

sẻ dairng sỏo-ay mâhk ná ká
 gáo-síp-èt bảht kâ
 ao nâhm a-rai ká?
 ao bpép-sẻ kòo-ut yài
 yâhk ja long ta-bee-un dỏo-ay
 ja bpai mêu-rài ká?
 yỏo meu-ung tai nahn mái?
 pỏot pah-săh tai bpen mái?

Unit 10

Exercise 1

- (a) mâi kâo jai
 (c) bplair wâh a-rai?
 (e) kẻe-un yung-ngai?
- (b) pỏot ẻk tee dâi mái?
 (d) pỏot chách chách nỏy dâi mái?

Exercise 2

- (a) bplair wâh meu-ung
 (c) bplair wâh rỏo
- (b) bplair wâh gin
 (d) bplair wâh mâi kâo jai

Exercise 3

- (a) chee-ung mài bpai yung-ngai?
 (b) ma-mỏo-ung gin yung-ngai?
 (c) toh-ra-sủp cháit yung-ngai?
 (d) 'sa-bai' kẻe-un yung-ngai?

Exercise 4

- (a) mâi chỏp ler-ee
 (b) mâi dee ler-ee
 (c) mâi ao ler-ee
 (d) mâi kâo jai ler-ee
 (e) (fung) mâi rỏo rêu-ung ler-ee

Exercise 5

- (a) a-rai ná?
 (b) pỏot chách chách nỏy dâi mái?
 (c) 'nủng' bplair wâh a-rai?
 (d) kâo jai (láir-o)

Reading practice

1 Words

gwâh	kwăh	grOOng	bpra-dtoo	bplah
bplào	dtrong	glai	glâi	glủp
krai	klái	krúp	kwahm	bpra-dtây
ta-nỏn	dta-lỏk	ka-yủn	sa-yăhm	sa-pâhp
ka-nâht	sa-nỒOk	sa-tảhn	sa-bai	bor-ri-sủt
cha-lỏrng	cha-lảht	fa-rủng	ka-yà	bor-ri-gahn

2 Conversation

- Interviewer** Have you lived in Thailand a long time?
Businessman No. Only about 6 months.
Interviewer You speak Thai very well. Like a native speaker.
Businessman Not at all! When Thais speak, sometimes I don't understand at all. And if I speak Thai, Thais don't understand (me) either.
- Interviewer** Where did you learn Thai?
Businessman I studied at a school in the Sukhumwit Road area and I used a textbook and tapes at home.
- Interviewer** Is Thai difficult?
Businessman Yes. But if I hadn't had tapes to listen to, it would have been more difficult.
- Interviewer** And can you read and write Thai?
Businessman I can read a little, if they are easy words. But I can't really write.

Unit 11

Exercise 1

- (a) chòrp mâhk jing jing/jung ler-ee
 (b) dee mâhk jing jing/jung ler-ee
 (c) nâh bèu-a mâhk jing jing/jung ler-ee
 (d) pèt mâhk jing jing/jung ler-ee
 (e) pairng mâhk jing jing/jung ler-ee

Exercise 2

- (a)-(ii), (iii), (iv), (vi), (viii)
 (b)-(i), (v), (vii), (ix), (x)

Reading practice

1 Words

yé	lé té	dtè	gè gà
lâir	gàir	páir	dtàir
dtó	lér tér	yér	yér yáir
prór	gòr	mòr	hõo-a rór

2 Passage

I'm from the Northeast. I live in a small village in Nongkhai. Before, I used to do rice farming, but I didn't like it because it's hard work. So I thought it would be better to come and work here. Now I'm working in a noodle shop in the Sukhumwit area. I wash up all day long. Sometimes I think it's boring. But I don't want to go back home because I don't want to do rice farming and the salary here is alright. It's better than up country.

3 Passage

Khun Chanida is from the South. She was born in Phuket. Her father is a policeman and her mother a housewife. They have three children. Chanida's parents and her brothers and sisters moved here when Chanida was five years old. Now Chanida's younger brother is studying at Mahidol University. He wants to be a doctor. Chanida's father wants her younger brother to go and continue his studies in America.

4 Passage

- Peter** You're from the North, aren't you?
Somchai Yes, I was born in Chiangmai. My parents moved here 30 years ago when I was still small. My father wanted me to study here because he thought that the schools here were better.
Peter Do you like living here?
Somchai Not very much. The traffic is really congested here. In Chiangmai the air is cleaner and the traffic isn't as congested as here.

Unit 12

Exercise 1

- (a)-(iii) (b)-(iv) (c)-(ii) (d)-(i)

Exercise 2

- (a) gâo mohng krêung
 (b) bài sǒng mohng yêe-síp
 (c) hâh mohng yen
 (d) êek síp-hâh nah-tee sèe tÔOm

Exercise 3

- (a) bpai chee-ung mài jorng dtõo-a tēe-nǎi?
 (b) rót (may) bpai chee-ung mài òrk gèe mohng?
 (c) chee-ung mài yòo hâhng jàhk grOOnng-tâyp gèe gi-loh?
 (d) cháí way-lah dern tahng gèe chõo-a mohng?
 (e) kêun rót (may) tēe-nǎi?

Reading practice

1

bpóht-gáht	sa-dtairm	bee-a sǐng
bpee-dter	gèp sa-dtahng	bprai-sa-nee
ber toh-ra-sùp	soy ga-sǎym-sǎn	

2

- (i)-(g) (ii)-(f) (iii)-(e) (iv)-(a) (v)-(b) (vi)-(c) (vii)-(d)

3

Nongkhai is 614 kilometres from Bangkok. VIP Co. Ltd has first-class air-conditioned coaches leaving Bangkok twice a day at 08.00 hrs and 21.30 hrs. The journey takes approximately 11 hours. The fare is 380 baht per person.

Unit 13

Exercise 1

- (a) chò-ay jòrt rôt hâi nòy dâi mái?
- (b) chò-ay séu bOO-rèe hâi nòy dâi mái?
- (c) chò-ay sùng kâo pùt gài jahn nèung hâi nòy dâi mái?
- (d) chò-ay jorng dtòo-a rôt fai hâi nòy dâi mái?

Exercise 2

- (b) chò-ay séu bOO-rèe hâi kOOn mah-lee nòy dâi mái?
- (c) chò-ay sùng kâo pùt gài jahn nèung hâi kOOn mah-lee nòy dâi mái?
- (d) chò-ay jorng dtòo-a rôt fai hâi kOOn mah-lee nòy dâi mái?

Exercise 3

- (a) bplào, mâi dâi bpai
- (b) bplào, mâi dâi sùng
- (c) bplào, mâi dâi séu
- (d) bplào, mâi dâi bòrk

Exercise 4

- (a) bplào krúp (kâ), mâi pairng
- (b) bplào krúp (kâ), mâi bêu-a
- (c) bplào krúp (kâ), mâi pèt
- (d) bplào krúp (kâ), mâi glai

Exercise 5

- (a) kǒr fâhk gOOn-jair wái nai dtòo sáyf dâi mái?
- (b) kǒr fâhk glòrng tài rôop wái nai dtòo sáyf dâi mái?
- (c) kǒr fâhk (toh-ra-sùp) meu têu wái nai dtòo sáyf dâi mái?
- (d) kǒr fâhk dtòo-a krêu-ung bin wái nai dtòo sáyf dâi mái?

Reading practice

1

- Clerk** Have you been to Wat That Phanom yet?
Sue Where?
Clerk Wat That Phanom.
Sue No, not yet. We'd like to go tomorrow, but we don't know how to get there.
Clerk You can go with a tour. There's an air-conditioned coach that goes every morning and returns in the evening.
Sue Really? How much does the tour cost?
Clerk 470 baht each.
Sue What time does the bus leave?
Clerk 8 o'clock in the morning. It leaves from right in front of this hotel and returns at 5 o'clock in the evening.
Sue And where do you book?
Clerk I can book for you. Are you going?
Sue Hang on a minute. We'll think about it first.

2

- Sue** Excuse me. Is it forbidden to take photos here?
Thai I don't think it is. But I'll go and ask an official for you. Hang on a minute . . . Excuse me, you can take photos here, can't you?
Official Here, you can. But inside photography is forbidden. Please tell the farangs they have to take their shoes off inside, too.

3

- (a)-(v) (b)-(i) (c)-(iv) (d)-(iii) (e)-(ii)

4

Ladies and gentlemen, we've arrived in Nakhorn Ratchasima and we're going to stop for a break and eat rice porridge for about half an hour. It's half past midnight now. The bus will leave at 1.00 a.m. sharp. Please come back to the coach before that. When you get off the bus, please take your bus ticket with you. Don't forget it because you must show it in the restaurant. If you don't have your ticket on you, you'll have to pay for the food yourself.

Unit 14

Exercise 1

- (a) gum-lung ja sùng ah-hăhn
- (b) gum-lung ja glùp bahn
- (c) gum-lung ja òrk bpai kung nôrk
- (d) gum-lung ja séu rót mài
- (e) gum-lung ja jorng dtòo-a rót fai bpai chee-ung mài

Exercise 2

- (a) wun têe gâo mók-ga-rah
- (b) wun têe sùp-gâo mí-tOO-nah
- (c) wun têe sâhm-sùp-èt sǐng-hăh
- (d) wun têe hâh préut-sa-jik-gah
- (e) wun têe sâhm may-sáh

Exercise 3

- (a) bahn têe pòm (chún) púk yòo mâi kôy yài tâo-rài
- (b) ah-hăhn têe rao gin mâi kôy pèt tâo-rài
- (c) kon tai têe pòm (chún) róo-jùk pòot pah-sáh ung-grit gèng
- (d) rohng ree-un têe pòm (chún) ree-un yòo glai
- (e) ah-jahn têe sòrn pah-sáh tai mah jàhk chee-ung mài
- (f) sêu-a têe pòm (chún) chòrp pairng gern bpai
- (g) núng-sêu têe pòm (chún) hâi kOOn yòo têe-năi?
- (h) bpee têe pòm ree-un pah-sáh tai mee núk ree-un mâi mâhk
- (i) wun têe rao bpai têe-o nakhorn phanom mâi kôy rónr tâo-rài

Reading practice

1

I've worked here nearly 20 years. It's alright working here. I clean the rooms and do the laundry. I come to work at 8 a.m. and go home at 4 p.m. Most of the guests here are foreigners. There are farangs, Chinese and Japanese too. Some are very kind. They give tips of over 100 baht. But it's the rainy season now. There aren't many guests. There's not much work either. So I sit chatting with my friends all day.

2

- Malee** Have you ever been to the seaside in Thailand, Sue?
Sue Yes. I've been to Pattaya once, two or three months ago.
Malee Was it fun?
Sue Well . . . it wasn't much. There were lots of people. I didn't like it. I prefer it quiet.
- Malee** If you're going to the seaside, I think it's better to go to Hua Hin. It's a lot quieter than Pattaya. There are fewer tourists. Otherwise, you should go to Koh Samet. It's fun renting a bungalow.
- Sue** What's a bungalow like?
Malee Most have just a bedroom and a bathroom. There's no air conditioning and no kitchen. But you can stay there quite comfortably, because there are sure to be good seafood restaurants nearby.

3

- John** Can I change my room?
Clerk Why is that, then?
John The air conditioner is broken.
Clerk Hang on a minute and I'll go up and take a look.
John There's no need. The toilet doesn't work either. There's no water. It would be better to change rooms.
- Clerk** You can't.
John Why is that, then?
Clerk There aren't any other rooms.

4

I got married in Bangkok. My husband is English. He worked at a large company in the Sukhumwit area. We came back to England three years ago. To tell you the truth, I really didn't want to come and live in England because I could hardly speak English. I had studied it at school but I wasn't very good. When English people spoke I couldn't understand a thing. So my husband had me study English at a school near home. At the school there were students of every nationality – Japanese, Chinese, German, African and Arabs, too. I had to study four days a week – Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday and Friday. I studied 2–3 hours a day from 9 o'clock until mid-day. After studying for about six months I think my English really improved a lot.

Consonant classes

The following chart lists all the Thai consonants according to class and gives the pronunciation for each consonant both at the beginning of a word and at the end. Perhaps the easiest way to remember the class of a consonant is to memorize the shorter lists of mid-class and high-class consonants so that everything not on those lists can be assumed to be low class.

Low class							
	น	ม	ง	ร	ล	ย	ว
initial	n	m	ng	r	l	y	w
final	n	m	ng	n	n	y	w
	ค	ช	ซ	ท	พ	ฟ	
initial	k	ch	s	t	p	f	
final	k	t	t	t	p	p	
	ก	ก	ก	ก	ก	ก	ก
initial	k	t	p	y	n		
final	k	t	p	n	n		
	ค	ก	ค	ค	ค	ค	ค
initial	ch	t	t	l	h		
final	—	t	t	n	—		

Mid class

	ก	จ	ด	ต	บ	ป	อ	ฎ	ฏ
initial	g	j	d	dt	b	bp	zero	d	dt
final	k	t	t	t	p	p	—	t	t

High class

	ข	ฃ	ถ	ผ	ฝ	ศ, ส, ษ	ห	ฐ
initial	k	ch	t	p	f	s	h	t
final	k	t	t	p	p	t	—	t

Vowels

Long vowels

-า	-อ	โ- ^๕	- ^๕	อู- ^๕	- ^๕	เ- ^๕	แ- ^๕	เ-ีย ^๕	เ-อ ^๕	-ว ^๕	เ-ิ ^๕
-ah	-or	-oh	-ee	-oo	-eu	-ay	-air	-ee-a	-eu-a	-oo-a	-er

Short vowels

- ^๕	ไ- ^๕	ไ- ^๕	-ิ ^๕	- ^๕	- ^๕	เ- ^๕	แ- ^๕	เ-า ^๕	-ะ ^๕
-u	-ai	-ai	-i	-oo	-eu	-e	-air	-ao	-a

Summary of tone rules

Words without tone marks

Initial consonant class	Live syllable	Dead syllable	
		Short vowel	Long vowel
Low class	Mid tone	High tone	Falling tone
Mid class	Mid tone	Low tone	Low tone
High class	Rising tone	Low tone	Low tone

Words with tone marks

Initial consonant class	mái àyk (ˀ)	mái toh (ˆ)	mái dtree (ˊ)	mái jùt-dta-wah (ˋ)
Low class	Falling	High	High	Rising
Mid class	Low	Falling	High	Rising
High class	Low	Falling	High	Rising

Taking it further

The following books will be useful if you wish to further your knowledge of Thai.

Dictionaries

Thai-English Dictionary by Domnern Garden and Sathienpong Wannapak, Bangkok: Amarin Printing and Publishing, 1994.

Thai English Student's Dictionary by Mary Haas, Stanford: Stanford University Press, 1964. This is the best dictionary for the serious beginner, with a romanized pronunciation guide to each Thai script entry and numerous examples of usage.

A New Thai Dictionary with Bilingual Explanation by Thianchai Iamwaramet, Bangkok: Ruam San, 1993.

Robertson's Practical English-Thai Dictionary by Richard Robertson, Rutland, Vermont and Tokyo: Charles E. Tuttle, 1969. A small, but invaluable dictionary for the beginner, which provides Thai script and romanized Thai equivalents to approximately 2,500 English words.

Grammar

Thai: An Essential Grammar by David Smyth, London: Routledge, 2002.

Reader

Thai for Advanced Readers by Benjawan Poomsan Becker, Berkeley, CA: Paiboon Publishing, 2000.

General

Linguistic Diversity and National Unity: Language Ecology in Thailand by William A. Smalley, Chicago and London: University of Chicago Press, 1994.

This volume offers an invaluable insight into the relationship between the national language, regional dialects and minority languages in Thailand.

(n)noun (v)verb

a-may-ri-gah	America	อเมริกา
a-may-ri-gun	American	อเมริกัน
a-páht-mén	apartment	อพาร์ทเมนต์
a-rai?	what?	อะไร
a-rai gôr dâi	anything	อะไรก็ได้
a-rai ná?	pardon?	อะไรนะ
a-ròy	tasty	อร่อย
ah-gàht	weather, climate	อากาศ
ah-jahn	teacher, lecturer	อาจารย์
ah-tít	week	อาทิตย์
ah-yóo	age	อายุ
àhn	read	อ่าน
àht (ja)	may	อาจ(จะ)
ai dtim	ice cream	ไอศกรีม
air	air conditioned	แอร์
ao	want (v)	เอา
ao ... bpai	take	เอา...ไป

ba-mèe	egg noodles	บะหมี่
ba-mèe náhm	egg noodle soup	บะหมี่น้ำ
bâhn	house, home	บ้าน
bahng	some	บาง
bahng krúng	sometimes	บางครั้ง
bàht	baht (unit of currency)	บาท
bai	(classifier)	ใบ
bài	afternoon	บ่าย
bàirp	style	แบบ
bee-a sǐng	Singha beer	เบียร์สิงห์
ber	number	เบอร์
bon	on	บน
bOO-rèe	cigarette	บุหรี่
bòrk (wâh)	say (that); tell	บอก (ว่า)
bor-ri-sùt	company	บริษัท
bor-ri-wayn bâhn	house compound	บริเวณบ้าน
bung-ga-loh	bungalow	บังกาลัย
bpai	go	ไป
... bpai nòy	a little tooไปหน่อย
bpén	to be; able to	เป็น
bpén yung-ngai?	how is it?	เป็นอย่างไร
bpép-sêe	Pepsi	เป๊ปซี่
bper sen	per cent	เปอร์เซ็นต์
bpèt	duck	เป็ด
bplah	fish	ปลา
bplair	translate	แปล
... bplair wâh a-rai?	what does ... mean?	แปลว่าอะไร

bplào	no	เปล่า
bplèe-un	change (v)	เปลี่ยน
bplòrt-pai	safe (adj)	ปลอดภัย
bpóht-gáht	postcard	ไปรษณีย์
bpra-mahn	about	ประมาณ
bpra-tâyt	country	ประเทศ
bprai-sa-nee	post office	ไปรษณีย์
bprùp ah-gàht	air conditioned	ปรับอากาศ
bpun-hăa	problem	ปัญหา
cháh	slow	ช้า
chahm	bowl	ชาม
cháht	nation	ชาติ
cháí	to use	ใช้
cháí dái	reasonable, acceptable	ใช้ได้
cháí way-lah	to take time	ใช้เวลา
cháí máí?	(question particle)	ใช่ไหม
chai ta-lay	seaside	ชายทะเล
cháo	morning	เช้า
chao dtàhng bpra-tâyt	foreigners	ชาวต่างประเทศ
chèt	spray (v)	ฉีด
chék bin	can I have the bill?	เช็คบิล
chern	please; to invite	เชิญ
chêu	first name,	ชื่อ
chêu-a	believe	เชื่อ
chim	taste (v)	ชิม
chòhk dee	good luck	โชคดี
chôo-a-mohng	hour	ชั่วโมง

chôo-ay ...	please ... ; to help	ช่วย ...
chôrp	like	ชอบ
chún	I (female)	ฉัน
chún	floor, level; class	ชั้น
chún nèung	first class	ชั้นหนึ่ง
chút	clear	ชัด
dái	can	ได้
dee	good	ดี
dee kêun	improve	ดีขึ้น
dée-o ...	wait a moment	เดี๋ยว ...
dèk	child	เด็ก
dern	walk (v)	เดิน
dern tahng	travel (v)	เดินทาง
deu-un	month	เดือน
dèuk	late at night, dark	ดึก
di-chún	I (female)	ดิฉัน
doo	look at	ดู
dôo-ay	too, also	ด้วย
doo-ung	(classifier)	ดวง
dung	loud	ดัง
dtàhng jung-wùt	up country	ต่างจังหวัด
dtàir (wáh)	but	แต่ (ว่า)
(dtàir) cháo	(from) early morning	(แต่)เช้า
dtairng moh	water melon	แตงโม
dtairng ngahn	marry; married	แต่งงาน
dtem (láir-o)	full	เต็ม(แล้ว)
dtèuk	concrete building	ตึก
dtèun	to wake up	ตื่น

dtìt	to stick, be stuck	ติด
dtìt air	to be air conditioned	ติดแอร์
dtìt dtoo-a	on you, with you	ติดตัว
dtòk long	agree(d)	ตกลง
dtôm yum gŏOng	shrimp 'tom yam'	ต้มยำกุ้ง
dtôn-mái	tree	ต้นไม้
dtôo sáyf	safe (n)	ตู้เซฟ
dtoo-a	body	ตัว
dtoo-a	(classifier)	ตัว
dtôo-a	ticket	ตั๋ว
dtòr	continue	ต่อ
dtorn	period of time	ตอน
dtorn bàì	afternoon	ตอนบ่าย
dtorn cháo	morning	ตอนเช้า
dtorn glahng keun	night time	ตอนกลางคืน
dtorn glahng wun	daytime	ตอนกลางวัน
dtorn née	now	ตอนนี้
dtorn yen	evening	ตอนเย็น
dtôrng	have to, must	ต้อง
dtrong	straight, exact	ตรง
dtrong née	right here	ตรงนี้
dtùm	low	ต่ำ
dtum-rah	textbook	ตำรา
dtum-ròo-ut	policeman	ตำรวจ
dtung	money, satang	สตางค์
èek	again; further	อีก
èek tee	again	อีกที
eng	self	เอง
èun	other	อื่น

fa-rùng	westerner	ฝรั่ง
fa-rùng-sàyt	French	ฝรั่งเศส
fàhk	deposit (v)	ฝาก
fairn	spouse, partner	แฟน
fung	listen	ฟัง
gài	chicken	ไก่
gâir	repair (v)	แก้
gâir-o	glass	แก้ว
gairng	curry	แกง
gairng gài	chicken curry	แกงไก่
gèc?	how many?	กี่
gèc mohng?	what time?	กี่โมง
gèng	good at	เก่ง
gèp	collect, keep	เก็บ
gèp wái	keep	เก็บไว้
... gern bpai	too เกินไป
gèrt	to be born	เกิด
gèu-up	almost	เกือบ
gi-loh	kilometre	กิโล
glai	far	ไกล
glái	near	ใกล้
gloo-a	afraid	กลัว
glòo-ay	banana	กล้วย
glòrng tàì rôop	camera	กล้องถ่ายรูป
glòrng tàì wee-dee-oh	video camera	กล้องถ่ายวิดีโอ
glùp	return	กลับ
gŏOn-jair	key	กุญแจ
gŏOng	shrimp	กุ้ง

gôr ...	well ...
... gôr láir-o gun	let's settle for ...
gòrn	before, first
grOOng-tâyp	Bangkok
gum-lung ... yòo	in the process of ...
gum-lung ja	about to ...
gùp	with
... gwàh	more than ...
gwâhng	wide
hâhm	forbid; forbidden
hâhng jàhk	at a distance from
hâi	to get someone to do something; for; give
hàirng	(classifier)
hòrng	room
hòrng kroo-a	kitchen
hòrng náhm	toilet, bathroom
hòrng norn	bedroom
hòrng rúp kàirk	living room
hòrng sôo-um	toilet
hun-loh	hello (on telephone)
im	full (with food)
ja	(future time marker)
jàhk	from
jahn	plate
jai dee	kind hearted
jâo kòrng	owner
jâo kòrng pah-sâh	native speaker

ก็ ...	ก็ ...
... ก็แล้วกัน	... ก็แล้วกัน
ก่อน	ก่อน
กรุงเทพ ฯ	กรุงเทพ ฯ
กำลัง ... อยู่	กำลัง ... อยู่
กำลังจะ ...	กำลังจะ ...
กับ	กับ
กว่า	กว่า
กว้าง	กว้าง
ห้าม	ห้าม
ห่างจาก	ห่างจาก
ให้	ให้
แห่ง	แห่ง
ห้อง	ห้อง
ห้องครัว	ห้องครัว
ห้องน้ำ	ห้องน้ำ
ห้องนอน	ห้องนอน
ห้องรับแขก	ห้องรับแขก
ห้องส้วม	ห้องส้วม
ฮันโล	ฮันโล
อิม	อิม
จะ	จะ
จาก	จาก
จาน	จาน
ใจดี	ใจดี
เจ้าของ	เจ้าของ
เจ้าของภาษา	เจ้าของภาษา

jâo nâh-têe	official	เจ้าหน้าที่
jing	true, truly	จริง
jon tœung	until	จนถึง
jorng	book (v)	จอง
jòrt	park (v)	จอด
jòt-mâi ah-gâht	aerogramme	จดหมายอากาศ
jum-gùt	Ltd	จำกัด
jung ler-ee	really, very	จังเลย
jung-wùt	province	จังหวัด
kâ, ká	(polite particles)	คะ, ค่ะ
ka-moy	burglar	ขโมย
ka-nôm	cake, dessert	ขนม
kâh	cost	ค่า
kâh châo	rent	ค่าเช่า
kâh doy-ee sâhn	fare	ค่าโดยสาร
kâh mút-jum	deposit	ค่ามัดจำ
kâhng	side	ข้าง
kàirk	guest; Indian	แขก
kâo	enter	เข้า
kâo jai	understand	เข้าใจ
káo	he, she, they	เขา
kâo	rice	ข้าว
kâo dtôm	rice porridge	ข้าวต้ม
kâo nâh bpèt	duck rice	ข้าวหน้าเป็ด
kêe-un	write	เขียน
kem	salty	เค็ม
ker-ee	used to (do); once (did)	เคย
kêun	get on (a bus); go up	ขึ้น

keun	night	คืน
kít	think; charge	คิด
kít doo	consider	คิดดู
klornḡ	canal	คลอง
klôrng	fluent	คล่อง
koh-láh	Coca-Cola	โคล่า
kon	person	คน
kong	bound to be, sure to be	คง
koo-ee	chat (v)	คุย
koo-un (ja)	should, ought to	ควร(จะ)
kòo-up	year(s) old	ขวบ
kòo-ut	bottle	ขวด
kOOOn	you (polite title)	คุณ
kôr . . . nòy	I'd like . . .	ขอ . . . หน่อย
kôr-tòht	excuse me	ขอโทษ
kôrng	of; things	ของ
kôrng wáhn	sweet, dessert	ของหวาน
kòrp-kOOOn	thank you	ขอบคุณ
koy	to wait	คอย
krai?	who?	ใคร
krêe-ut	stressed, tense	เครียด
krêu-ung bprùp ah-gàht	air conditioner	เครื่องปรับอากาศ
kréung	half	ครึ่ง
kréung chôo-a mohng	half an hour	ครึ่งชั่วโมง
kroo	teacher	ครู
krôo	a moment	ครู่
krúng	time(s)	ครึ่ง

krúp, krúp pǒm	(polite particles)	ครับ, ครับผม
kum	word	คำ
kun	(classifier)	คัน
kûng bon	upstairs	ข้างบน
kûng lâhng	downstairs	ข้างล่าง
kûng nai	inside	ข้างใน
kûng nôrk	outside	ข้างนอก
kùp	drive (v)	ขับ
kwäh	right	ขวา
kwahm	(abstract noun prefix)	ความ
kwahm jing	(in) truth; actually	ความจริง
kwahm kít	idea	ความคิด
kwahm rúk	love	ความรัก
kwahm sa-àht	cleaning	ความสะอาด
kwahm sŌOk	happiness	ความสุข
la	per	ละ
lâhng	wash (plates)	ล้าง
lâhng	under	ล่าง
láir	and	และ
láir-o	and then; already	แล้ว
láir-o . . . lâ?	and how about . . . ?	แล้ว . . . ละ
láir-o gôr . . .	and	แล้วก็
. . . láir-o réu yung?	. . . yet (or not)?	แล้วหรือยัง
lée-o	turn (v)	เลี้ยว
lék	small	เล็ก
lém	(classifier)	เล่ม
lên	play (v)	เล่น
lěr?	(question particle)	หรือ

ler-ee bpai	<i>carry on, go on</i>	ลุยไป
lêrk	<i>cease; give up</i>	เลิก
leum	<i>forget</i>	ลืม
loh	<i>kilo</i>	โล
long	<i>get off (a bus)</i>	ลง
long ta-bee-un	<i>register</i>	ลงทะเบียน
lôo-ung nâh	<i>in advance</i>	ล่วงหน้า
lôok	<i>(classifier)</i>	ลูก
lôok	<i>child/children</i>	ลูก
lôok chai	<i>son</i>	ลูกชาย
lôok sǎo	<i>daughter</i>	ลูกสาว
lòr	<i>handsome</i>	หล่อ
lorng	<i>try out</i>	ลอง
lót	<i>reduce</i>	ลด
lũng	<i>behind</i>	หลัง
ma-hǎh-wít-ta-yah-lai	<i>university</i>	มหาวิทยาลัย
mah	<i>come</i>	มา
mah tǔeng	<i>reach</i>	มาถึง
mâhk	<i>very, much</i>	มาก
... mái?	<i>(question particle)</i>	ไหม
mái	<i>wood</i>	ไม้
mài	<i>again; new</i>	ใหม่
mâi	<i>not</i>	ไม่
mâi bpén rai	<i>never mind</i>	ไม่เป็นไร
mâi dee	<i>bad</i>	ไม่ดี
mâi dtòrng	<i>there's no need</i>	ไม่ต้อง
mâi kôy ... (tào-rài)	<i>not very ...</i>	ไม่ค่อย ... (เท่าไร)

mâi ... ler-ee	<i>not at all</i>	ไม่...เลย
mâi ... ròrk	<i>not ... at all</i>	ไม่...หรอก
mâi-kwahm wâh a-rai?	<i>what does it mean?</i>	หมายความว่าอะไร
mâir	<i>mother</i>	แม่
mâir bâhn	<i>housewife</i>	แม่บ้าน
mâir nâhm	<i>river</i>	แม่น้ำ
ma-la-gor	<i>papaya</i>	มะละกอ
ma-môo-ung	<i>mango</i>	มะม่วง
may-noo	<i>menu</i>	เมนู
mee	<i>have</i>	มี
mêu-a	<i>when</i>	เมื่อ
mêu-a gòrn	<i>formerly</i>	เมื่อก่อน
mêu-rài?	<i>when?</i>	เมื่อไร
měu-un	<i>like, similar, as</i>	เหมือน
měu-un gun	<i>likewise; fairly</i>	เหมือนกัน
meu-ung tai	<i>Thailand</i>	เมืองไทย
mèun	<i>10,000</i>	หมื่น
mòo bâhn	<i>village</i>	หมู่บ้าน
mÓOng lôo-ut	<i>mosquito screen</i>	มุ้งลวด
mǒr	<i>doctor</i>	หมอ
mun	<i>it</i>	มัน
ná	<i>(question particle)</i>	นะ
nâh	<i>in front (of)</i>	หน้า
nâh	<i>next; season</i>	หน้า
nâh fǒn	<i>rainy season</i>	หน้าฝน
nâh bèu-a	<i>boring</i>	น่าเบื่อ
nâh rúk	<i>lovable, cute</i>	น่ารัก

nâh sǒn jai	<i>interesting</i>	น่าสนใจ
nâh yòo	<i>nice to live in/at</i>	น่าอยู่
nah-tee	<i>minute</i>	นาที
náhm	<i>water</i>	น้ำ
náhm tôo-um	<i>flood</i>	น้ำท่วม
nahm sa-gOOon	<i>surname</i>	นามสกุล
nahn	<i>a long time</i>	นาน
nai	<i>in</i>	ใน
nâir	<i>certain</i>	แน่
nâirn	<i>crowded</i>	แน่น
nêe	<i>this</i>	นี้
nêe eng	<i>this very . . .</i>	นี่เอง
nêe kê/krúp	<i>here you are</i>	นี่คะ/ครับ
néu-a	<i>beef</i>	เนื้อ
nèung	<i>one, a</i>	หนึ่ง
nin-tah	<i>gossip (v)</i>	นินทา
nít nèung	<i>a little bit</i>	นิดหนึ่ง
nít-nòy	<i>a little bit</i>	นิดหน่อย
nórng chai	<i>younger brother</i>	น้องชาย
nórng sǎo	<i>younger sister</i>	น้องสาว
nòy	<i>a bit</i>	หน่อย
nóy-nàh	<i>custard apple</i>	น้อยหน่า
nùk	<i>heavy; hard (work)</i>	หนัก
núk ree-un	<i>pupil (school)</i>	นักเรียน
núk sèuk-sǎh	<i>student</i>	นักศึกษา
núk tOO-rá-git	<i>businessman</i>	นักธุรกิจ
núm bplah	<i>fish sauce</i>	น้ำปลา
núm kǎirng	<i>ice</i>	น้ำแข็ง

núm kǎirng bplào	<i>iced water</i>	น้ำแข็งเปล่า
núm ma-nao	<i>lemonade</i>	น้ำมะนาว
núm mun hǒy	<i>oyster sauce</i>	น้ำมันหอย
núm sôm	<i>orange juice</i>	น้ำส้ม
núm sôm kún	<i>fresh orange juice</i>	น้ำส้มคั้น
nûng	<i>sit; travel by</i>	นั่ง
nǔng	<i>movie</i>	หนัง
ngahn	<i>work (n)</i>	งาน
ngâi	<i>easy</i>	ง่าย
ngêe-up	<i>quiet, calm</i>	เงียบ
ngern deu-un	<i>salary</i>	เงินเดือน
ngong	<i>dazed, confused</i>	งง
oh kay	<i>OK</i>	โอ เค
ôr	<i>exclamation of realization</i>	อ้อ
òrk	<i>go out; leave</i>	ออก
pah-sǎh	<i>language</i>	ภาษา
pâhk dtâi	<i>the South</i>	ภาคใต้
pâhk ee-sǎhn	<i>the Northeast</i>	ภาคอีสาน
pâhk glahng	<i>the Central Region</i>	ภาคกลาง
pâhk nǔu-a	<i>the North</i>	ภาคเหนือ
pàirn	<i>(classifier)</i>	แผ่น
pairng	<i>expensive</i>	แพง
pêe-chai	<i>older brother</i>	พี่ชาย
pêe-nórng	<i>brothers and sisters</i>	พี่น้อง
pêe-sǎo	<i>older sister</i>	พี่สาว
pèt	<i>spicy</i>	เผ็ด
pêu-un	<i>friend</i>	เพื่อน

pít	wrong	ผิด
pǒm	I (male)	ผม
pǒn-la-mái	fruit	ผลไม้
pôo-chai	man/boy	ผู้ชาย
pôo-doy-ee sǎhn	passenger	ผู้โดยสาร
pôo-jùt-gahn	manager	ผู้จัดการ
pôo-rái	criminal	ผู้ร้าย
pôo-yài	adult	ผู้ใหญ่
pôo-yǐng	woman/girl	ผู้หญิง
pôot	speak	พูด
pôot lén	joke (v)	พูดเล่น
por	enough	พอ
pôr	father	พ่อ
prŏOng née	tomorrow	พรุ่งนี้
prór wáh	because	เพราะว่า
púk	stay; rest (v)	พัก
pút	stir fry, fried	ผัด
pút lom	fan (n)	พัดลม
ráhn-ah-hǎhn	restaurant	ร้านอาหาร
ray-o	quick	เร็ว
rêe-uk wáh ...	(it's) called ...	เรียกว่า...
ree-un	study, learn	เรียน
rêet	iron (v)	รีด
rêu	or	หรือ
... rêu bplào?	... or not?	... หรือเปล่า
rohng rairm	hotel	โรงแรม
rohng ree-un	school	โรงเรียน

róo	know (facts)	รู้อ
róo rêu-ung	understand	เรื่อง
róo-jùk	know (people, places)	รู้จัก
róo-sèuk	feel	รู้สึก
rôop	shape, form	รูป
ror	wait	รอ
rorng táo	shoes	รองเท้า
rót	car	รถ
rót dtít	traffic jam	รถติด
rót fai	train	รถไฟ
rót may	bus	รถเมล์
rót too-a	tour bus	รถทัวร์
rúp	receive	รับ
sa-àht	clean	สะอาด
sa-bai	to be well, comfortable	สบาย
sa-dairng	show (v)	แสดง
sa-dtáirm	stamp	แสตมป์
sa-gòt	spell (v)	สะกด
sa-měr	always	เสมอ
sa-nǎhm bin	airport	สนามบิน
sa-tǎhn tót	embassy	สถานทูต
sa-wùt dee	hello	สวัสดี
sǎh-mee	husband	สามี
sǎhp	know (facts)	ทราบ
sái	left	ซ้าย
sǎi	(telephone) line	สาย
see	(mood particle)	ซี
sěe	colour	สี

sěe dairng	red	สีแดง
sěe dum	black	สีดำ
sěe kǎo	white	สีขาว
sěe kěe-o	green	สีเขียว
sěe lěu-ung	yellow	สีเหลือง
sěe núm dtahn	brown	สีน้ำตาล
sěe núm ngern	blue	สีน้ำเงิน
sěe-a	spend; waste; broken	เสีย
sěe-ung	sound; tone	เสียง
sèe-yáirk	crossroads	สแยก
séu	buy	ซื้อ
sêu-a pâh	clothes	เสื้อผ้า
sí	(mood particle)	ซิ
sôm	orange (n)	ส้ม
sòng	send	ส่ง
sǎo-ay	beautiful, pretty	สวย
sǎo-un	garden	สวน
sòo-un máhk	mostly	ส่วนมาก
sǎon	zero	ศูนย์
sǎong	high	สูง
sòop bOO-rèe	smoke (v)	สูบบุหรี่
sÒOt soy	end of the soi	สุดซอย
sôm	repair, mend	ซ่อม
sǎrn	teach	สอน
soy	soi, lane	ซอย
súk	wash (clothes)	ซัก
sùng	to order	สั่ง
sùp-bpa-rót	pineapple	สับปะรด

ta-lay	sea	ทะเล
ta-na-kahn	bank	ธนาคาร
ta-nǎn	road	ถนน
tâh	if	ถ้า
tâh yàhng nún	in that case	ถ้าอย่างนั้น
tâhm	ask	ถาม
tahn	eat	ทาน
tahng	way	ทาง
tahng ah-gàht/reu-a	by air/sea	ทางอากาศ/เรือ
tahng kwäh/sái	on the right/left	ทางขวา/ซ้าย
tai	Thai	ไทย
tài rôop	take a photograph	ถ่ายรูป
tâir-o née	this vicinity	แถวนี้
tâo-nún	only	เท่านั้น
tâo-rài?	how much?	เท่าไร
táyp	tape	เทป
tee	time	ที่
têe	at; (relative pronoun)	ที่
têe-kèe-a bOO-rèe	ashtray	ที่เขี่ยบุหรี่
têe-nǎi?	where	ที่ไหน
têe-nêe	here	ที่นี่
têe-nôhn	over there	ที่โน่น
têe-o	visit, go out	เที่ยว
těung	reach (v)	ถึง
toh	telephone (v)	โทร
toh-ra-sùp	telephone (n)	โทรศัพท์
toh-ra-sùp meu těu	mobile phone	โทรศัพท์มือถือ
too-a	tour	ทัวร์

tòok	correct; cheap	ถูก
tÓOk	every	ทุก
tòrt	take off (clothes)	ถอด
tum	do, make	ทำ
tum nah	do rice farming	ทำนา
tum ngahn	work (v)	ทำงาน
tum-mai	why?	ทำไม
tûn	you (polite)	ท่าน
túng ... láir ...	both ... and ...	ทั้ง ... และ ...
túng mòt	altogether	ทั้งหมด
túng wun	all day	ทั้งวัน
un	(classifier)	อัน
ung-grít	English	อังกฤษ
wâh	think, say; that	ว่า
wâhn	sweet	หวาน
wâhng	free, vacant	ว่าง
way-lah	time	เวลา
wěe	bunch (of bananas); comb	หวี
wun	day	วัน
wun née	today	วันนี้
wun sǎo wun ah-tít	weekend	วันเสาร์วันอาทิตย์
yàh	don't	อย่า
yah gun yOOng	insecticide	ยากันยุง
yâhk	difficult	ยาก
yàhk (ja)	want to	อยาก(จะ)
yài	large	ใหญ่
yái	move (home)	ย้าย

yâir	to be a nuisance, hassle	แยะ
yêe-bpÒOn	Japanese	ญี่ปุ่น
yér-yáir	lots	เยอะแยะ
yòo	situated at; live at	อยู่
yÒOt	to stop	หยุด
yung	still	ยัง
yung-ngai?	how?	อย่างไร

<i>about,</i>	bpra-mahn	ประมาณ
<i>approximately</i>		
<i>about to ...</i>	gum-lung ja	กำลังจะ...
<i>acceptable</i>	chái dái	ใช้ได้
<i>actually</i>	kwahm jing	ความจริง
<i>administrator</i>	pôo-bor-ri-hähn	ผู้บริหาร
<i>adult</i>	pôo-yài	ผู้ใหญ่
<i>(in) advance</i>	lôo-ung nâh	ล่วงหน้า
<i>aerogramme</i>	jòt-măi ah-gàht	จดหมายอากาศ
<i>afraid</i>	gloo-a	กลัว
<i>afternoon</i>	(dtorn) bài	ตอนบ่าย
<i>again</i>	èek; èek tee; mài	อีก; อีกที; ใหม่
<i>age</i>	ah-yóo	อายุ
<i>agree(d)</i>	dtòk long	ตกลง
<i>air; by air</i>	ah-gàht; tahng ah-gàht	อากาศ; ทางอากาศ
<i>air conditioned</i>	dtit air; bprùp ah-gàht	ติดแอร์; ปรับอากาศ
<i>air conditioner</i>	krêu-ung bprùp ah-gàht	เครื่องปรับอากาศ
<i>airport</i>	sa-năhm bin	สนามบิน
<i>all day</i>	túng wun	ทั้งวัน
<i>almost</i>	gèu-up	เกือบ

<i>already</i>	lái-r-o	แล้ว
<i>also</i>	dóo-ay	ด้วย
<i>altogether</i>	túng mòt	ทั้งหมด
<i>always</i>	sa-měr	เสมอ
<i>America</i>	a-may-ri-gah	อเมริกา
<i>American</i>	a-may-ri-gun	อเมริกัน
<i>and</i>	lái-r; lái-r-o gôr	และ; แล้วก็
<i>anything</i>	a-rai gôr dái	อะไรก็ได้
<i>apartment</i>	a-páht-mén	อพาร์ทเมนท์
<i>arrive</i>	mah těung	มาถึง
<i>ashtray</i>	têe-kèe-a bOO-rèe	ที่เขี่ยบุหรี่
<i>ask</i>	tăhm	ถาม
<i>bad</i>	mâi dee	ไม่ดี
<i>baht</i>	bàht	บาท
<i>banana</i>	glôo-ay	กล้วย
<i>Bangkok</i>	grOOng-tây	กรุงเทพฯ ฯ
<i>bank</i>	ta-na-kahn	ธนาคาร
<i>bathroom</i>	hông náhm	ห้องน้ำ
<i>beautiful</i>	sôo-ay	สวย
<i>because</i>	prór wâh	เพราะว่า
<i>bedroom</i>	hông norn	ห้องนอน
<i>beef</i>	néu-a	เนื้อ
<i>beer</i>	bee-a	เบียร์
<i>before</i>	gòrn	ก่อน
<i>behind</i>	kúng lǔng	ข้างหลัง
<i>believe</i>	chêu-a	เชื่อ
<i>big</i>	yài	ใหญ่
<i>black</i>	sěe dum	สีดำ

<i>blue</i>	sěe núm ngern	สีน้ำเงิน
<i>book (n)</i>	núng-sěu	หนังสือ
<i>book (v)</i>	jorng	จอง
<i>boring</i>	nâh bèu-a	น่าเบื่อ
<i>born</i>	gèrt	เกิด
<i>both ... and ...</i>	túng ... láir ...	ทั้ง ... และ ...
<i>bottle</i>	kòo-ut	ขวด
<i>bound to</i>	kong	คง
<i>bowl</i>	chahm	ชาม
<i>boy</i>	pôo-chai	ผู้ชาย
<i>boyfriend</i>	fairn	แฟน
<i>broken</i>	sěe-a	เสีย
<i>brother (older)</i>	pêe-chai	พี่ชาย
<i>brother (younger)</i>	nórng chai	น้องชาย
<i>brothers and sisters</i>	pêe-nórng	พี่น้อง
<i>brown</i>	sěe núm dtahn	สีน้ำตาล
<i>building (concrete)</i>	dtèuk	ตึก
<i>bungalow</i>	bung-ga-loh	บังกาโล
<i>burglar</i>	ka-moy	ขโมย
<i>bus; tour bus</i>	rót may; rót too-a	รถเมล์; รถทัวร์
<i>businessman</i>	núk tOO-rá-git	นักธุรกิจ
<i>but</i>	dtàir (wâh)	แต่(ว่า)
<i>buy</i>	séu	ซื้อ
<i>(it's) called ...</i>	rêe-uk wâh ...	เรียกว่า ...
<i>camera;</i>	glórng tàì rôop;	กล้องถ่ายรูป;
<i>video camera</i>	glórng tàì wee-dee-oh	กล้องถ่ายวิดีโอ
<i>can</i>	dái; bpen	ได้; เป็น
<i>canal</i>	klorng	คลอง

<i>car</i>	rót	รถ
<i>Central Region</i>	pâhk glahng	ภาคกลาง
<i>certain</i>	nâir	แน่
<i>change (v)</i>	bplée-un	เปลี่ยน
<i>chat (v)</i>	koo-ee	คุย
<i>cheap</i>	tòok	ถูก
<i>chicken</i>	gài	ไก่
<i>chicken curry</i>	gairng gài	แกงไก่
<i>child</i>	dèk	เด็ก
<i>child (one's own)</i>	lòok	ลูก
<i>cigarette</i>	bOO-rèe	บุหรี่
<i>class; first class</i>	chún; chún nèung	ชั้น; ชั้นหนึ่ง
<i>clean</i>	sa-àht	สะอาด
<i>clear</i>	chút	ชัด
<i>clothes</i>	sêu-a pâh	เสื้อผ้า
<i>collect</i>	gèp	เก็บ
<i>colour</i>	sěe	สี
<i>come</i>	mah	มา
<i>company</i>	bor-rí-sùt	บริษัท
<i>confused</i>	ngong	งง
<i>continue</i>	dtòr	ต่อ
<i>correct</i>	tòok	ถูก
<i>cost</i>	kâh	ค่า
<i>country</i>	bpra-tây	ประเทศ
<i>criminal</i>	pôo-rái	ผู้ร้าย
<i>crossroads</i>	sèe-yâirk	สี่แยก
<i>crowded</i>	nâirn	แน่น

curry	gairng	แกง
custard apple	nóy-nàh	น้อยหน่า
cute	nâh rúk	น่ารัก
daughter	lôok sǎo	ลูกสาว
day	wun	วัน
daytime	(dtorn) glahng wun	(ตอน)กลางวัน
deposit (n)	kâh mút-jum	ค้ำมัดจำ
deposit (v)	fâhk	ฝาก
difficult	yâhk	ยาก
distant from	hâhng jâhk	ห่างจาก
do	tum	ทำ
doctor	mǎo	หมอ
don't	yâh	อย่า
drive	kùp	ขับ
duck	bpèt	เป็ด
easy	ngâi	ง่าย
eat	gin; tahn	กิน; ทาน
egg noodles	ba-mèe	บะหมี่
egg noodle soup	ba-mèe náhm	บะหมี่น้ำ
embassy	sa-tâhn tôot	สถานทูต
English	ung-grít	อังกฤษ
enough	por	พอ
enter	kâo	เข้า
evening, in the evening	(dtorn) yen	ตอนเย็น
every	tóok	ทุก
excuse me	kǎo-tóht	ขอโทษ
expensive	pairng	แพง

fairly mǎu-un gun	... เหมือนกัน
fan (n; cooling device)	pút lom	พัดลม
far	glai	ไกล
fare	kâh doy-ee sâhn	ค่าโดยสาร
father	pôr	พ่อ
feel	róo-sèuk	รู้สึก
fish	bplah	ปลา
fish sauce	núm bplah	น้ำปลา
flood	náhm tôo-um	น้ำท่วม
floor, level	chún	ชั้น
fluent	klórng	คล่อง
for	hâi	ให้
forbid	hâhm	ห้าม
foreigner	chao dtâhng bpra-tâyt	ชาวต่างประเทศ
forget	leum	ลืม
formerly	mêu-a gòrn	เมื่อก่อน
free (vacant)	wâhng	ว่าง
French	fa-rùng-sàyt	ฝรั่งเศส
friend	pêu-un	เพื่อน
from	jâhk	จาก
fruit	pǎn-la-mái	ผลไม้
fry (stir fry)	pùt	ผัด
full	dtem (láir-o)	เต็ม(แล้ว)
full (stomach)	im	อิ่ม
garden	sǎo-un	สวน
German	yer-ra-mun	เยอรมัน
get off (e.g. a bus)	long	ลง

get on (e.g. a bus)	kêun	ขึ้น
get someone to do something	hâi	ให้
girlfriend	fairn	แฟน
give	hâi	ให้
give up; cease	lêrk	เลิก
glass	gâir-o	แก้ว
go	bpai	ไป
go out	òrk	ออก
go up	kêun	ขึ้น
good	dee	ดี
good at	gèng	เก่ง
gossip (v)	nin-tah	นินทา
green	sêe kêe-o	สีเขียว
half	krêung	ครึ่ง
half an hour	krêung chôo-a mohng	ครึ่งชั่วโมง
handsome	lòr	หล่อ
happiness	kwahm sÒOk	ความสุข
hard (work)	nùk	หนัก
have	mee	มี
he	káo	เขา
heavy	nùk	หนัก
hello	sa-wùt dee	สวัสดี
hello (on telephone)	hun-loh	ฮัลโล
help (v)	chôo-ay	ช่วย
here	têe-nêe	ที่นี่
high	sông	สูง
hotel	rohng rairm	โรงแรม

hour	chôo-a-mohng	ชั่วโมง
house, home	bâhn	บ้าน
housewife	mâir bâhn	แม่บ้าน
how?	yung-ngai	อย่างไร
how are you?	sa-bai dee lér?	สบายดีหรือ
how many?	gèe	กี่
how much?	tâo-rài	เท่าไร
husband	sâh-mee	สามี
I (female)	chún/di-chún	ฉัน/ดิฉัน
I (male)	pòm	ผม
ice	núm kâirng	น้ำแข็ง
ice cream	ai dtim	ไอศกรีม
iced water	núm kâirng bplào	น้ำแข็ง เปลา
if	tâh	ถ้า
improve	dee kêun	ดีขึ้น
in	nai	ใน
in front (of)	nâh	หน้า
insecticide	yah gun yOOn	ยากันยุง
inside	kung nai	ข้างใน
interesting	nâh sôn jai	น่าสนใจ
iron (v)	rêet	รีด
is	bpn	เป็น
it	mun	มัน
Japanese	yêe-bpOOn	ญี่ปุ่น
joke (v)	pòot lèn	พูดเล่น
keep	gèp wái	เก็บไว้
key	gOOn-jair	กุญแจ

<i>kilo</i>	loh	โล
<i>kilometre</i>	gi-loh	กิโล
<i>kind (adj)</i>	jai dee	ใจดี
<i>kitchen</i>	hôngg kroo-a	ห้องครัว
<i>know (facts)</i>	róo; sâhp	รู้; ทราบ
<i>know (people, places)</i>	róo-jùk	รู้จัก
<i>language</i>	pah-sáh	ภาษา
<i>large</i>	yài	ใหญ่
<i>lecturer</i>	ah-jahn	อาจารย์
<i>left (side)</i>	sái	ซ้าย
<i>like (v)</i>	chôrp	ชอบ
<i>like (similar)</i>	měu-un	เหมือน
<i>likewise</i>	měu-un gun	เหมือนกัน
<i>listen</i>	fung	ฟัง
<i>live (in, at)</i>	yòo	อยู่
<i>living room</i>	hôngg rúp kàirk	ห้องรับแขก
<i>long (time)</i>	nahn	นาน
<i>look at</i>	doò	ดู
<i>lots</i>	yér-yáir	เยอะแยะ
<i>loud</i>	dung	ดัง
<i>love</i>	rúk	รัก
<i>low</i>	dtùm	ต่ำ
<i>Ltd</i>	jum-gùt	จำกัด
<i>luck: good luck</i>	chôhk dee	โชคดี
<i>man</i>	pôo-chai	ผู้ชาย
<i>manager</i>	pôo-jùt-gahn	ผู้จัดการ
<i>mango</i>	ma-môo-ung	มะม่วง
<i>married</i>	dtàirng ngahn	แต่งงาน

<i>may</i>	àht (ja)	อาจ(จะ)
<i>mean: what does ... mean?</i>	... bplair wâh a-rai? ... mǎi-kwahm wâh a-rai?	... แปลว่าอะไร ... หมายความว่า ว่าอะไร
<i>menu</i>	may-noo	เมนู
<i>minute</i>	nah-tee	นาที
<i>moment</i>	krôo	ครู่
<i>money</i>	ngern; dtung	เงิน; สตางค์
<i>month</i>	deu-un	เดือน
<i>morning</i>	cháo	เช้า
<i>mosquito screen</i>	mÓOng lôo-ut	มุ้งลวด
<i>mostly</i>	sòo-un mǎhk	ส่วนมาก
<i>mother</i>	máir	แม่
<i>move (home)</i>	yái (bâhn)	ย้าย(บ้าน)
<i>movie</i>	nǔng	หนัง
<i>must</i>	dtôrng	ต้อง
<i>name (n; v)</i>	chêu	ชื่อ
<i>nation</i>	cháht	ชาติ
<i>native speaker</i>	jào kórng pah-sáh	เจ้าของภาษา
<i>near</i>	glái	ใกล้
<i>never mind</i>	mái bpen rai	ไม่เป็นไร
<i>new</i>	mài	ใหม่
<i>next</i>	nâh	หน้า
<i>night</i>	keun	คืน
<i>night time, at night</i>	(dtorn) glahng keun	(ตอน)กลางคืน
<i>noodle shop</i>	râhn gǎo-ay dtěe-o	ร้านก๋วยเตี๋ยว
<i>Northeastern Region</i>	pâhk ee-sáhn	ภาคอีสาน
<i>Northern Region</i>	pâhk nǔu-a	ภาคเหนือ

<i>not</i>	mâi	ไม่
<i>not ... at all</i>	mâi ... ròrk	ไม่... หรอก
<i>not at all ...</i>	mâi ... ler-ee	ไม่... เลย
<i>not very ...</i>	mâi kôy ... táo-rài	ไม่ค่อย... เท่าไร
<i>now</i>	dtorn née	ตอนนี้
<i>number</i>	ber	เบอร์
<i>of</i>	körng	ของ
<i>official (n)</i>	jáo-nâh-tee	เจ้าหน้าที่
<i>only</i>	tâo-nún	เท่านั้น
<i>or</i>	réu	หรือ
<i>... or not?</i>	... réu bplào?	... หรือเปล่า
<i>orange</i>	sôm	ส้ม
<i>orange juice</i>	núm sôm	น้ำส้ม
<i>order</i>	sùng	สั่ง
<i>other</i>	èun	อื่น
<i>outside</i>	kûng nôrk	ข้างนอก
<i>owner</i>	jáo körng	เจ้าของ
<i>papaya</i>	ma-la-gor	มะละกอ
<i>pardon?</i>	a-rai ná?	อะไรนะ
<i>park (v)</i>	jòrt	จอด
<i>passenger</i>	pôo-doy-ee sáhn	ผู้โดยสาร
<i>Pepsi</i>	bpép-sêe	เป๊ปซี่
<i>per</i>	la	ละ
<i>per cent</i>	bper sen	เปอร์เซ็นต์
<i>person</i>	kon	คน
<i>photograph (v)</i>	tài rôop	ถ่ายรูป
<i>pineapple</i>	sùp-bpa-rót	สับปะรด

<i>plate</i>	jahn	จาน
<i>play (v)</i>	lên	เล่น
<i>please</i>	chôo-ay ...	ช่วย...
<i>policeman</i>	dtum-ròo-ut	ตำรวจ
<i>post office</i>	bprai-sa-nee	ไปรษณีย์
<i>postcard</i>	bpóht-gáht	ไปรษณีย์
<i>problem</i>	bpun-háh	ปัญหา
<i>province</i>	jung-wùt	จังหวัด
<i>pupil (school)</i>	núk ree-un	นักเรียน
<i>quick</i>	ray-o	เร็ว
<i>quiet</i>	ngêe-up	เงียบ
<i>rainy season</i>	nâh fôn	หน้าฝน
<i>reach (v)</i>	těung	ถึง
<i>read</i>	àhn	อ่าน
<i>red</i>	sêe dairng	สีแดง
<i>reduce</i>	lót	ลด
<i>register (v)</i>	long ta-bee-un	ลงทะเบียน
<i>rent (n)</i>	kâh cháo	ค่าเช่า
<i>repair (v)</i>	sôm; gâir	ซ่อม; แก้
<i>rest (v)</i>	púk	พัก
<i>restaurant</i>	râhn-ah-háhn	ร้านอาหาร
<i>return (v)</i>	glùp	กลับ
<i>rice</i>	káo	ข้าว
<i>rice farming</i>	tum nah	ทำนา
<i>rice porridge</i>	kao dtôm	ข้าวต้ม
<i>right (side); on the right</i>	kwäh; tahng kwäh	ขวา; ทางขวา
<i>river</i>	mâir náhm	แม่น้ำ
<i>road</i>	ta-nôn	ถนน
<i>room</i>	hông	ห้อง

<i>safe (adj)</i>	bplòrt-pai	ปลอดภัย
<i>safe (n)</i>	dtôo sáyf	ตู้เซฟ
<i>salary</i>	ngern deu-un	เงินเดือน
<i>salty</i>	kem	เค็ม
<i>Saturday</i>	wun sǎo	วันเสาร์
<i>say (that); tell</i>	bòrk (wâh)	บอก(ว่า)
<i>school</i>	rohng ree-un	โรงเรียน
<i>sea</i>	ta-lay	ทะเล
<i>seaside</i>	chai ta-lay	ชายทะเล
<i>self</i>	eng	เอง
<i>send</i>	sòng	ส่ง
<i>she</i>	káo	เขา
<i>shoes</i>	rorng táo	รองเท้า
<i>should, ought to</i>	koo-un (ja)	ควร(จะ)
<i>show (v)</i>	sa-dairng	แสดง
<i>shrimp</i>	gŌOng	กุ้ง
<i>sister (older)</i>	pêe-sǎo	พี่สาว
<i>sister (younger)</i>	nórng sǎo	น้องสาว
<i>sit</i>	nûng	นั่ง
<i>situated at</i>	yòo	อยู่
<i>slow</i>	cháh	ช้า
<i>small</i>	lék	เล็ก
<i>smoke (v)</i>	sòop bŌO-rèe	สูบบุหรี่
<i>some</i>	bahng	บาง
<i>sometimes</i>	bahng krúng	บางครั้ง
<i>soi, lane</i>	soy	ซอย
<i>son</i>	lòok chai	ลูกชาย
<i>sound (n)</i>	sĕe-ung	เสียง

<i>speak</i>	pôot	พูด
<i>spell</i>	sa-gòt	สะกด
<i>spend</i>	sĕe-a	เสีย
<i>spicy</i>	pèt	เผ็ด
<i>spray (v)</i>	chĕet	ฉีด
<i>stamp</i>	sa-dtáirm	แสตมป์
<i>stay</i>	púk	พัก
<i>still</i>	yung	ยัง
<i>stir fried</i>	pùt	ผัด
<i>stop (v)</i>	yŌOt	หยุด
<i>stressed, tense</i>	krĕe-ut	เครียด
<i>stuck</i>	dtít	ติด
<i>student</i>	núk sĕuk-sáh	นักศึกษา
<i>study (v)</i>	ree-un	เรียน
<i>style</i>	bàirp	แบบ
<i>Sunday</i>	wun ah-tít	วันอาทิตย์
<i>surname</i>	nahm sa-gŌOn	นามสกุล
<i>sweet (adj)</i>	wǎhn	หวาน
<i>sweet (n) (dessert)</i>	kŏrng wǎhn	ของหวาน
<i>take</i>	ao ... bpai	เอา...ไป
<i>take off (clothes)</i>	tòrt	ถอด
<i>tape (cassette)</i>	táyp	เทป
<i>taste (v) (something)</i>	chim	ชิม
<i>tasty</i>	a-ròy	อร่อย
<i>teach</i>	sŏrn	สอน
<i>teacher</i>	kroo; ah-jahn	ครู; อาจารย์
<i>telephone (v)</i>	toh	โทร

telephone (n)	toh-ra-sùp	โทรศัพท์
telephone (mobile)	toh-ra-sùp meu tǎu	โทรศัพท์มือถือ
telephone line	sǎi	สาย
textbook	dtum-rah	ตำรา
Thai	tai	ไทย
Thailand	meu-ung tai	เมืองไทย
thank you	kòrp-kOOon	ขอบคุณ
they	káo	เขา
thing	kǒrng	ของ
think	kít	คิด
this	nêe	นี้
ticket	dtóo-a	ตั๋ว
time	way-lah; tee	เวลา; ที
time(s)	krúng	ครั้ง
today	wun nêe	วันนี้
toilet	hòrng náhm	ห้องน้ำ
tomorrow	prÓOng nêe	พรุ่งนี้
too, also	dòo-ay	ด้วย
too (gern) bpai	... (เกิน) ไป
tour	too-a	ทัวร์
traffic jam	rót dtít	รถติด
train	rót fai	รถไฟ
translate	bplair	แปล
travel (v)	dern tahng	เดินทาง
tree	dtôn-mái	ต้นไม้
true, truly	jing	จริง
try out	lorng	ลอง
turn	lée-o	เลี้ยว

understand	káo jai; róo rêu-ung	เข้าใจ; รู้เรื่อง
university	ma-hǎh-wít-tá-yah-lai	มหาวิทยาลัย
until	jon tǔng	จนถึง
up country	dtàhng jung-wùt	ต่างจังหวัด
upstairs	kúng bon	ข้างบน
use (v)	cháí	ใช้
very	máhk	มาก
visit (v)	têe-o	เที่ยว
wait	ror; koy	รอ; คอย
wake up (oneself)	dtèun	ตื่น
walk (v)	dern	เดิน
want (something)	ao	เอา
want to	yàhk (ja)	อยาก(จะ)
wash (clothes)	súk	ซัก
wash (dishes)	láhng	ล้าง
waste (v)	sěe-a	เสีย
water	náhm	น้ำ
water melon	tairng moh	แตงโม
weather, climate	ah-gàht	อากาศ
week	ah-tít	อาทิตย์
weekend	wun sǎo wun ah-tít	วันเสาร์วันอาทิตย์
well (be well)	sa-bai	สบาย
well ... (hesitation)	gór ...	ก็ ...
westerner	fa-rùng	ฝรั่ง
what?	a-rai	อะไร
when?	mêu-rài	เมื่อไร
when	mêu-a	เมื่อ

where?	têe-năi	ที่ไหน
white	sêe kăo	สีขาว
who?	krai	ใคร
why?	tum-mai	ทำไม
wide	gwâhng	กว้าง
with	gùp	กับ
wood	mái	ไม้
word	kum	คำ
work (n)	ngahn	งาน
work (v)	tum ngahn	ทำงาน
write	kêe-un	เขียน
wrong	pít	ผิด
yellow	sêe lêu-ung	สีเหลือง
... yet (or not)?	... láir-o (réu yung)?	... แล้ว(หรือยัง)
you	kOOon; tân	คุณ; ท่าน
zero	sóon	ศูนย์

Numbers in brackets refer to the unit in which each grammar point is first covered.

- adjectives (2)
- age (8)
- air conditioned (13)
- alternative questions: ... or ... ? (4)
- ao + noun + **bpai** (12)
- asking the time (12)
- Bangkok (5)
- by (train/bus/car) (12)
- bpên** + noun (1)
- châi mái?** questions (1)
- classifiers (5)
- colours (2)
- comparisons (7)
- container words (classifiers) (4)
- countries (7)
- dates (14)
- days of the week (13)
- direction verbs: **mah** and **bpai** (5)
- distances (12)
- gôr** (11)
- ... **gôr dâi** (9)
- greetings (1)
- gum-lung** + verb (7)
- gum-lung ja** + verb (14)
- hâi** (9), (13), (14)
- how? questions (10)
- how many? questions (8)
- how much? questions (2)
- if (9)
- intensification (11)
- ker-ee** + verb (7)
- kwahm** (7)
- lâir-o ... lâ?** questions (8)
- lâir-o réu yung?** questions (8)
- lêr?** (6)
- lêr?** questions (2), (6)
- location words (3), (4), (5)
- mái?** questions (2)
- mâi kôy ... tâo-rài** (7)
- mâi ... ròrk** (3)
- mêu-a** (11)
- mêu-un gun** (11)
- months (14)
- more than ... (11)
- must (7)
- ná?** questions (2)
- nâh** + verb (11)
- negative: **mâi** + verb (2)
- negative questions (14)
- nôo** (4)
- noun + adjective (1)
- noun + pronoun + verb (11)
- numbers: cardinal (1), (2), (3)
- numbers: ordinal (14)
- parts of the day (6), (12)
- pêe-nórng** (8)

- per kilo/fruit/bunch (2)
- place names (3)
- polite invitations (8)
- polite particles (1), (3), (9)
- polite requests: asking for something (4)
- polite requests: asking someone to do something (6), (13)
- polite requests: asking to do something yourself (4)
- polite vocabulary (9)
- pô** ... (4)
- possession (6)
- pronouns (1)
- reduplication of adjectives (3)
- regions (11)
- relative pronouns (14)
- ... **rêu bplào?** questions (13)
- róo rêu-ung** (10)
- seasons (14)
- see** (7)
- sùk** + number + classifier (5)
- talking about the future: **ja** (6)
- time: asking the time (12)
- telling the time (12)
- too ... (9)
- verb + **bpen** (7)
- verb + **bpen/dâi** + adverb (7)
- verb + **dâi** (2)
- verb + **lâir-o** (3)
- verb + **lên** (10)
- verb + **wái** (13)
- verb serialization (5)
- wâh** (6)
- want to/ want (5)
- wh- question + **bâhng** (9)
- what? questions (1)
- when? questions (6)
- where? questions (4)
- who? questions (6)
- why? questions (8), (13)
- word order (2)
- yâh** (10)
- years (14)